



CYNUCTIS STEEDMANII

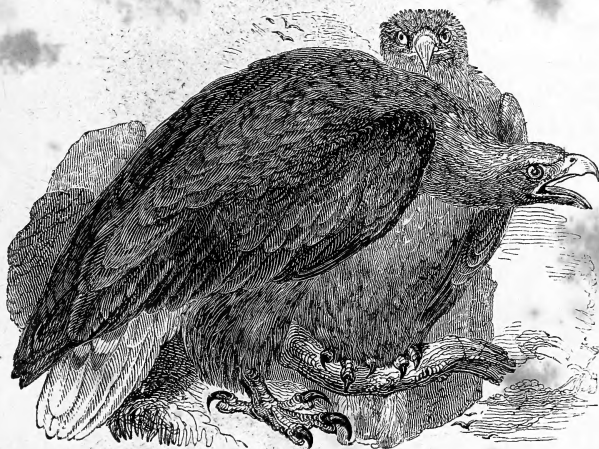
E. S. Edm.



LIBRARY  
MUSEUM OF AFRICAN ART  
318-A STREET, NORTHEAST  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20002

WANDERINGS AND ADVENTURES  
IN  
THE INTERIOR  
OF  
SOUTHERN AFRICA.

BY  
ANDREW STEEDMAN.



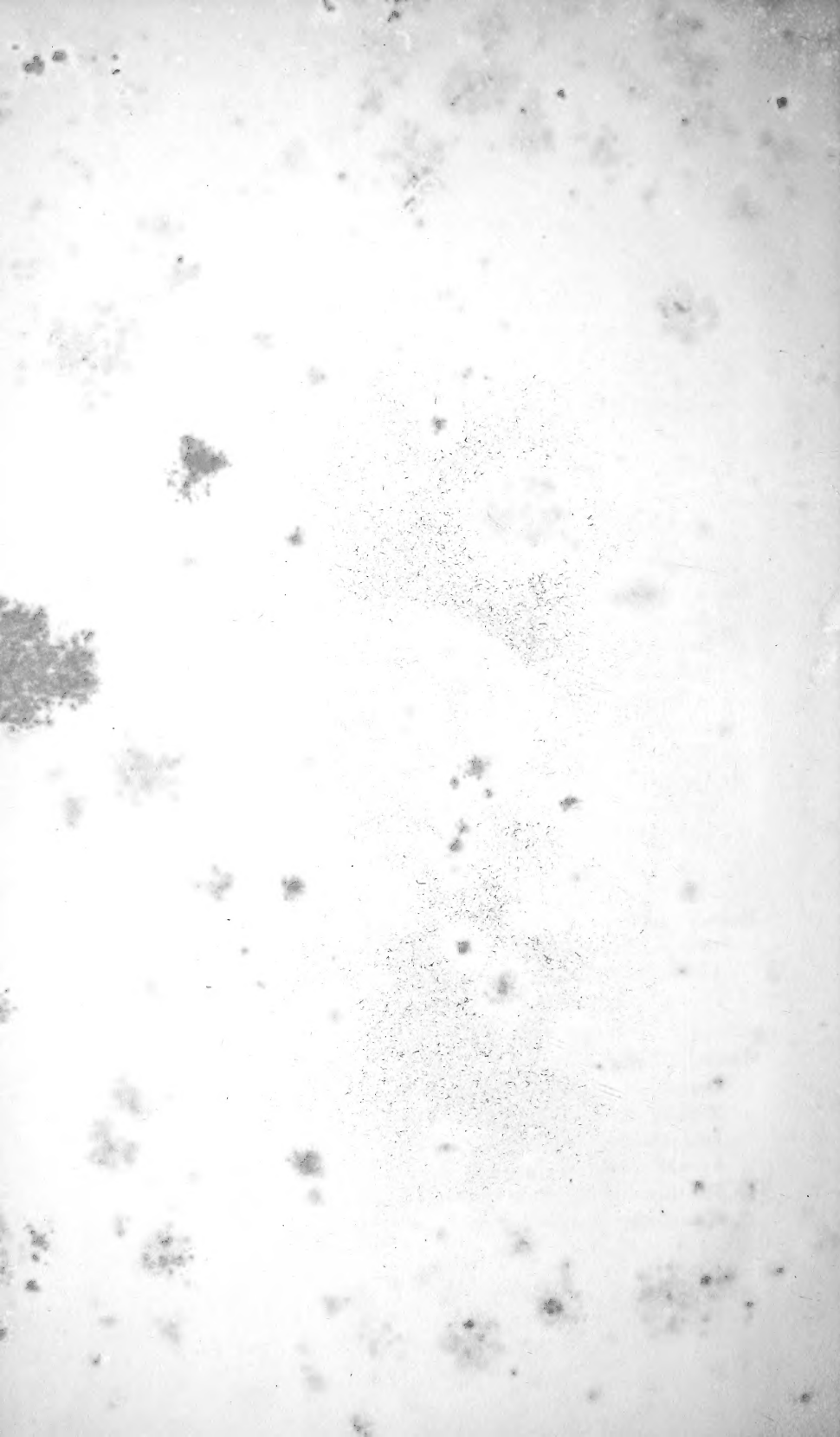
ILLUSTRATED WITH LITHOGRAPHIC AND WOOD ENGRAVINGS.

TWO VOLUMES.—VOL. II.

LONDON:  
LONGMAN & CO., PATERNOSTER-ROW.

1835.

gift: Robert McMillen - Nov 1978



## CONTENTS OF THE SECOND VOLUME.

---

### PART THE THIRD.

#### CHAPTER I.

Leave Cape Town for Lattakoo—Stupendous Pass—Miseries of African Travelling—Neuwveld Mountains—Storm—Distressing Story—Klipspringer—Winterveld—Celebrated Lion-hunter—Pastoral state of the Boors—Beautiful appearance of the Country—Excessive Heat—“Mirage”—Oxen alarmed at Lions—Run off with Waggon—Scarcity of Water—Hottentots prefer Water to Wine—Reach the Banks of the Orange River—Bushmen and Vultures—Flight of Locusts—Cross the River on a Raft—Solitary ride with a Bushman—Surprise a Party of Natives bivouacking on the Plain—Griqua Town.—Page 1.

#### CHAPTER II.

Berends's Attack on Matakatzee—Description of Griqua Town—Waterboer—Bechuana Village—Litakou—Female Agriculturists—Crocodiles—Inhabited Tree.—Page 29.

#### CHAPTER III.

Murder of Lober and Son—Moonlight Scene on the Banks of the Orange River—Bushman's Kraal—Anecdotes of Bushmen—Thunder-storm—Ostrich Nest—Melancholy Accident—Gemsboks—Tremendous Hail-storm—Awkward situation—Enraged Farmer—Immense Flight of Locusts—Beaufort—Zwartberg—Hex River—Village of Worcester—Tulbagh—General condition of the border Boors.—Page 47.

## CHAPTER IV.

Report reaches Cape Town of the loss of the Ship *Jessie*.—Proceed to the Wreck—Hottentots' Holland Kloof—Meet a Boor—Obtain further Particulars—Three Shipwrecked Mariners—Their account of the Wreck, and providential Escape—Reach the Beach—Melancholy Scene—Dyer's Island—Meet the Captain of the Vessel and one of the Passengers—Return through a wild and solitary Country—Moravian Establishment—Thoughts suggested by the Scene—Kindness manifested by the Moravian Brethren—Leprosy House—Hemel and Aarde Mountains—Gradendaal.—Page 69.

## CHAPTER V.

General Descriptions of African Zoology—New Species of Animals, together with various Specimens of Natural History, collected in Southern Africa.—Page 85.

## CHAPTER VI.

Caffer Irruption—Speech of an old Caffer Chief—State of the Country previous to the War—Cause of the frequent collisions between the Colonists and Caffers—Border Policy—Moral condition of the People.—Page 130.

---

 PART THE FOURTH.

## APPENDIX, No. 1.

Some particulars of the Expedition lately dispatched from Cape Town, Cape of Good Hope, for the purpose of exploring Central Africa—Account of the Progress of Discovery in South Africa, up to the period of the departure of the Expedition.—Page 145.

*Journal of a Traveller.*—The Author accompanies the Expedition under Dr. Smith as far as Philippolis—Estimate of the value of the Party composing the Expedition—Manner of living—The Sabbath—Indian visitors—Boers in the Griqua Country in search of pasture—Griqua and Hottentot Servants—The Modder River—The Vaal River—Platberg—Poccana—Beauty of the

Country—Kraals of Corannas—Hart River—The Chief Makhatla—The Party augmented by Corannas—*Seechagholie* River—Hunting and its successes—Description of the Inhabitants of the country—Maloppo River—Preparation to meet an expected enemy—Some of the Author's people abscond to steal cattle from Masilikatsie—A tribe of the Matebely avenge themselves—A battle; four of the Natives killed—The Traveller routed with the loss of his waggons and rich collection of natural curiosities—Sufferings of the Party in returning to the Colony—Missionary hospitalities, &c.—Page 225.

## APPENDIX, No. 2.

Wreck of the Grosvenor East Indiaman—An Expedition leaves the Colony in search of the survivors of the Wreck—Discover a party of Mulattoes, descendants of Europeans wrecked on the coast of Cafferland about twenty years previous to the loss of that vessel—Rev. W. Shaw visits these People in 1828.—Page 254.

## APPENDIX, No. 3.

The Amaponda Caffers—The Chief taken—Population—Extreme sufferings from want—Cruelties of the Natives—Bury a Child alive—Dreadful superstitions—Affecting particulars relative to the degraded state of the People.—Page 264.

## APPENDIX, No. 4.

Some particulars connected with the recent irruption of the Caffers along the Eastern Frontier of the Colony.—Page 316.

THE UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO  
DEPARTMENT OF CHEMISTRY  
LABORATORY OF ORGANIC CHEMISTRY  
530 SOUTH EAST ASIAN AVENUE  
CHICAGO, ILLINOIS 60607  
TEL: 773-936-3700  
FAX: 773-936-3701  
WWW: WWW.CHEM.UCHICAGO.EDU

1. Name of the compound: *1,2-diphenyl-1,2-ethanediol*  
2. Molecular formula:  $C_{14}H_{12}O_2$   
3. Molecular weight: 228.27 g/mol  
4. Boiling point: 260-265 °C  
5. Melting point: 100-105 °C  
6. Density: 1.11 g/cm<sup>3</sup>  
7. Refractive index: 1.545  
8. Solubility: Insoluble in water, soluble in organic solvents.  
9. Synthesis: From styrene and phenol.  
10. Uses: Used in the synthesis of various dyes and pigments.

11. Safety: Irritant, may cause skin and eye irritation.  
12. Storage: Store in a cool, dry place.  
13. Handling: Use appropriate personal protective equipment (PPE).  
14. Disposal: Dispose of in accordance with local regulations.  
15. References: *Organic Chemistry*, 5th ed., Wiley, 1996.  
16. Additional information: This compound is a diastereomer of 1,2-diphenyl-1,2-ethanediol.

DT  
827  
S 81 X  
MAA

# WANDERINGS AND ADVENTURES

IN THE

## INTERIOR OF SOUTHERN AFRICA.

---

### PART THE THIRD.

---

#### CHAPTER I.

Leave Cape Town for Lattakoo—Stupendous Pass—Miseries of African Travelling—Neuwveld Mountains—Storm—Distressing Story—Klipspringer—Winterveld—Celebrated Lion-hunter—Pastoral state of the Boors—Beautiful appearance of the Country—Excessive Heat—“Mirage”—Oxen alarmed at Lions—Run off with Waggons—Scarcity of Water—Hottentots prefer Water to Wine—Reach the Banks of the Orange River—Bushmen and Vultures—Flight of Locusts—Cross the River on a Raft—Solitary ride with a Bushman—Surprise a Party of Natives bivouacking on the Plain—Griqua Town.

On the 17th September, 1831, I quitted Cape Town with the intention of making an excursion as far as Lattakoo, in the Bechuana country, in company with a friend who was proceeding to Beaufort. We took our departure on horseback, the travelling waggon having been dispatched by a different route, to the farm of Mr. de Vos, on the Hex River, where we purposed to meet it.

Immediately in the rear of the Paarl village, which

we reached at the end of our first day's ride, is De Toie's Kloof, a steep pass over the first great range of mountains that separates the interior from the Cape. This ridge has been designated by a French naturalist as the "back-bone of the earth;" a name, however, says Mr. Barrow, "That is much more appropriate on account of its singular appearance than great extent. The naked summits of these mountains are pointed and jagged, like the vertebræ of the back-bone of an animal: they consist of a number of sandstone strata, placed in a horizontal direction, containing a great deal of iron, being in places perfectly red; and they rest upon beds of granite, clay, and slate."

The sun had been above the horizon for several hours when we began to ascend these heights on the following day. The exhalations from the earth, which usually indicate excessive heat, and which, in the earlier part of the morning, completely obscured the surrounding scenery, had begun to disperse; so that when we reached the summit of the pass, all was bright and serene, a vast extent of cloudless sky spreading its interminable azure over the beautifully varied earth as far as the eye could reach. Before us lay a delightful prospect of mountain, hill, and dale. On one hand towered the lofty promontory of Table Mountain, that ancient landmark of "sea-tossed men;" and on the other, immediately below, lay stretched along in quiet beauty the hamlets of



waggon-makers, Vlie, Jehoshaphat, the Paarl, and Drakenstein, surrounded by fertile vineyards and orange groves, with the distant village church, the serpentine windings of the Berg or Mountain River, and many other agreeable objects. The eye roamed with delight over this wide expanse of varied beauties, which, sweetly blended, and relieving each other in the landscape, produced a scene of deep and peculiar interest.

The Franch Hoek mountain bounded the view in one direction, at the foot of which lay the scattered village of that name, so called from its having been the spot selected for their retreat by the French Protestants, when they fled from the persecutions consequent upon the revocation of the edict of Nantes by Louis XIV. To them, it is said, the colony is indebted for the introduction of the vine. The village lies in a deep recess, and seems an eligible place of refuge, formed for contemplation and retirement from the world's confusion. It must have strangely contrasted with the scenes of strife and turmoil from which these persecuted exiles had fled. They discovered, indeed, a retreat which the poet so ardently desired, when he exclaimed

“ Oh! for a lodge in some vast wilderness  
Some boundless contiguity of shade,  
Where rumour of oppression and deceit  
Might never reach me more !”

I had lingered long amidst this sublime scenery,

with feelings of extreme delight, but was now to leave it for wilder and more uncultivated regions. Having advanced a short distance through the opening pass, I again turned to take a parting look. The projecting rocks now interrupted my view, and when I had proceeded down the deep and gloomy recess of this stupendous ravine, "wild and lonesome as ever mountain eagle or savage vulture soared above," how changed the prospect from that which had so recently engaged my admiration! Alpine peaks reared on either hand their vast naked masses, that cast a dark and dreary shadow on the abyss below.

"Soon we raise the eye to range  
O'er prospects wild, grotesque, and strange ;  
Sterile mountains, rough and steep,  
That bound abrupt the valley deep,  
Heaving to the clear blue sky  
Their ribs of granite, bare and dry ;  
And ridges, by the torrents worn,  
Thinly streak'd with scraggy thorn,  
Which fringes Nature's savage dress,  
Yet scarce relieves her nakedness."

An oppressive silence reigned throughout this gloomy glen, broken only by the mountain torrent, as it rushed down some shelving rock, or the faint passing breeze, which seemed to whisper to the heart, "This is Nature's solitude."

Our ride was tedious in the extreme, as we had frequently to dismount and lead our horses over

the loose stones that obstructed our path down the rugged precipices ; and as the sun had nearly reached the horizon before we passed the Kloof, the friend who accompanied me began, as well as myself, to despair of reaching any shelter for the night. We were, however, at length gratified by suddenly observing an opening that terminated this gloomy defile ; and we shortly afterwards enjoyed the comfort of a night's repose at the hospitable abode of Mr. de Plessie. His farm is situated on the opposite bank of the Breede River, which at the end of a most fatiguing journey we had with no little difficulty succeeded in fording with our wearied horses, having once or twice narrowly escaped the quicksands.

On the next day we proceeded to the Hex River, where we overtook the waggons ; and as there was a bright moon, we were enabled to reach the top of the Hex River Mountain the same night. On the 21st we entered upon the Karroo ; and after having travelled for the last three days through a succession of mountain passes, we found an agreeable change in the extensive prospect that now opened before us. We *uitspanned* about midnight, and on the following morning our journey lay over a long plain of red gravelly soil, covered with stunted bushes, bounded by gently undulating hills, and backed by lofty mountains ; the great chain of Zwartberg being upon our right, and the cold Bokefeld on our left.

A few ostriches were the only living objects to be distinguished on the plain : we observed eighteen or twenty at no great distance from our waggon ; but on perceiving us they made off with great speed. The weather was pleasant for travelling, the thermometer at noon standing at  $59^{\circ}$  in the shade. On the 23rd, we found the road so wretched, that we selected, as the best part of it, the bed of a river, where a number of persons had been destroyed about six months before by the bursting of a water-spout, while they were halting on their way to the interior from Cape Town.

Jackals' Fountain was the spot of our evening encampment, from whence we advanced on the ensuing day to the Turtle-Dove River, after having passed over one of the worst roads that imagination can conceive. We left this place about nine in the evening, intending to avail ourselves of the moonlight, by travelling the whole night. We had not proceeded on our route above half an hour, when our conductor drove the waggon into a bank of heavy sand ; and the oxen being unable to draw it up the ascent, we were obliged to put our spades to work, and dig a path, by which we succeeded in extricating it after nearly three hours' labour. No sooner was this difficulty overcome, than we fell into another of a similar description, which compelled us to abandon all further attempt to proceed until daylight. Starting again about eight o'clock, we con-

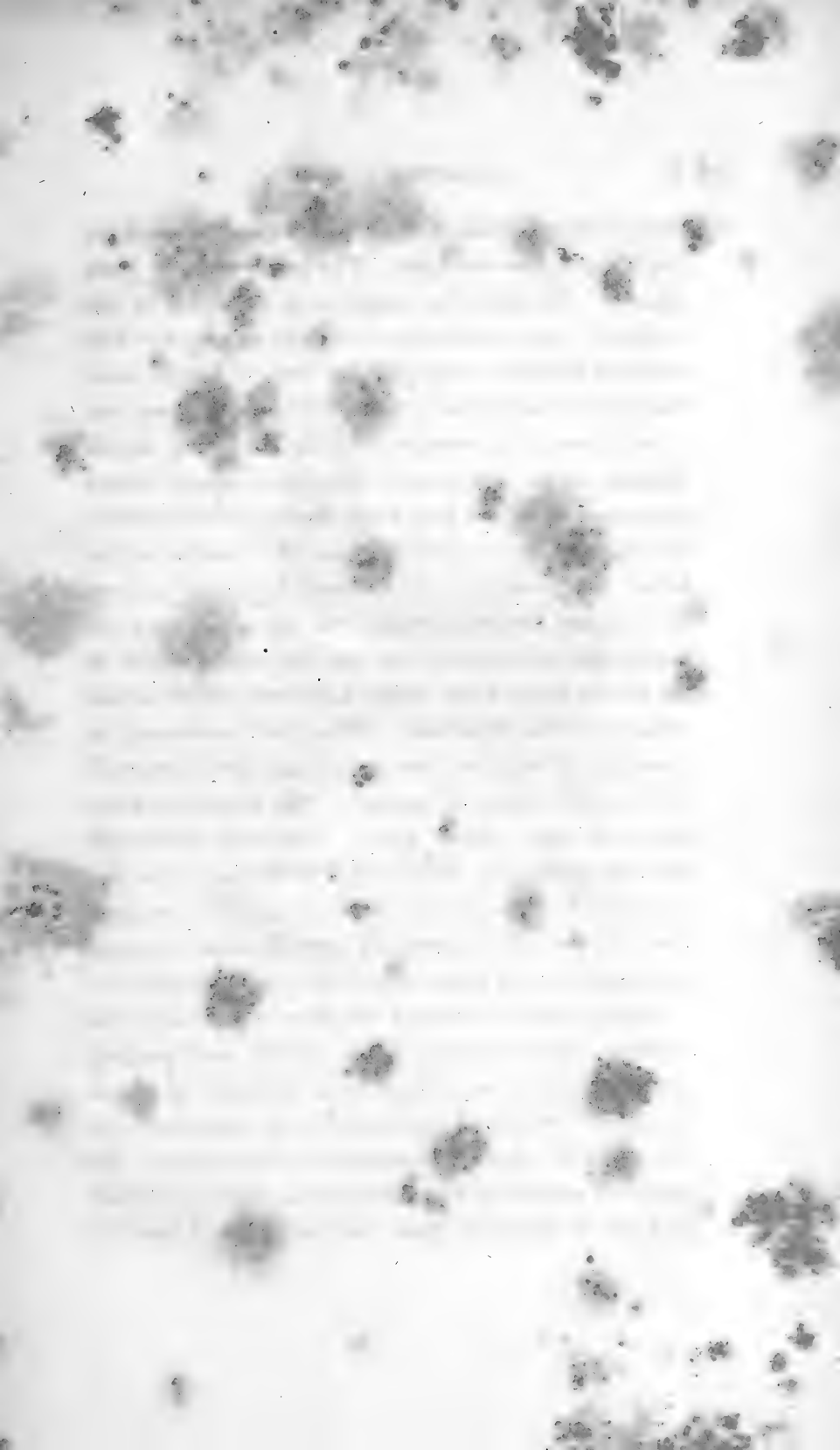
tinued our progress without intermission until we reached that romantic spot, the Dweekie or Rhinoceros River. On the 26th we crossed the Gamka or Lion River, and on the 27th arrived at the Beaufort. In consequence of the heavy rains the appearance of the country was much more favourable than it had been for some years past.

We left Beaufort on the 30th ; and, amidst violent storms of hail and rain, we crossed the great chain of the Neufeld Mountains, the tops of which were covered with snow, while the thermometer stood at noon at 47°. We were detained by the weather for three or four days at the farm of a Boor named Boonartie, for whose son, a lad of fourteen, I could not help feeling some commiseration, as he was obliged to keep watch at night under a straw-built hovel, during this tempestuous weather, for the purpose of protecting his father's sheep from beasts of prey, which are generally more on the alert in such stormy seasons. On the previous night some jackals had attacked and bitten off the tails of several lambs : three had died of cold ; and on the preceding day others had been destroyed by the *Læmer-vanger*, or bearded vulture.

Boonartie and his wife appeared to be hospitable people ; but their house was the picture of misery, the thatch of one room having completely disappeared, while the wind and rain penetrated through the shattered and dilapidated roof of the other to such a

degree, that it was with difficulty candles could be kept burning on the table. The family were in great distress. Besides the parents, it consisted of ten children, and an increase was daily expected. The husband related a very pitiable story of having been compelled to abandon a much better farm about two years before, in consequence of the continued deprivations of the Bushmen, who had several times attempted to shoot him with their poisoned arrows. On one occasion, returning from the funeral of his father, his attention was attracted by a vast number of vultures hovering round the mountain near his house, and on reaching the spot he beheld eight of his horses lying dead, which had been killed in his absence by the Bushmen. They had succeeded in carrying off his sheep and goats, and had destroyed the horses to prevent pursuit. He found his wife, who had been left at home, labouring under the greatest agitation. While the Bushmen were engaged in their work of plunder upon the premises, she had been in momentary apprehension of their breaking into the house where she lay concealed.

On the 4th of October I left Boonartie's farm, the weather having become more settled, and passing over the ridge of mountains at a distance of about two hours' journey, I descended to an open plain, in the midst of which I bivouacked for the night. At daybreak observing four ostriches on the top of a hill at a short distance from the waggon, I was in





THE KLIP-SPRINGER.



anxious expectation of obtaining a shot; but my approach being noticed, they bounded off with amazing speed across the plain, outstripping the horseman and his steed.

Klaas, my Hottentot, saw a couple of klip-springers climbing the summit of the mountain, and taking his gun went in pursuit of them. This creature, of which I procured a male and female, somewhat resembles the chamois of the Alps, and like that animal is confined entirely to mountainous regions. Its young falls an easy prey to eagles and other rapacious birds inhabiting the same localities. There is perhaps no creature which exhibits a more striking display of the Divine Wisdom in its peculiar adaptation to its mode and habits of life. The general colour so closely resembles that of the rocks among which it is found, that unless in motion it will elude the observation of the most vigilant sportsman; and by its surprising leaps from cliff to cliff, it defies the approach of dogs. The hair of its body is from two to three inches long, and stands perpendicularly out from the skin, forming a natural pad, which serves to protect its body from the natural injuries it would otherwise sustain when in contact with the projecting rocks. The habitation of this antelope is confined to mountainous regions and inaccessible crags, along the brinks of which it bounds with the greatest security and speed. The hoofs, instead of being pointed and flat as in other antelopes, are

perfectly round and cylindrical, being worn only at the tips, on which alone the animal treads. This peculiarity of structure in the hoof, and the rigid form of the pastern joints, account for the amazing agility which the klip-springer displays in bounding among the most dangerous rocks and precipices. The thermometer at noon stood at  $78^{\circ}$ . I passed through Bushmans' Porte, and having travelled about nine hours in the course of this day, again halted at sunset, in a wild open country. Storms of thunder and lightning continued at intervals with great violence during the night.

Ascending a steep hill on the 6th, I crossed into the Winterveld, and about five o'clock in the afternoon reached the farm of Stoffel Jacobs, an extensive grazier. Jacobs was said to possess upwards of nine thousand sheep, besides oxen and other cattle. It was pleasing to see the cattle returning home to their fold, and the eagerness with which they rushed to the water, after having been out all day in the parched desert. This farm was situated at a place called Lion Fountain, from the number of lions that frequented the neighbourhood, and were in the habit of resorting to the spring, particularly during the dry season: but this circumstance seems in no respect to have intimidated Jacobs; for since taking possession of the farm, which his predecessor had vacated solely on this account, he had become one of the most celebrated lion-hunters in this part of the

country. He had shot no less than two hundred lions, eight out of the number in one day.

After supping with Jacobs, I retired to the waggon. The stars were shining brightly in the heavens, whilst all was still around, except when the silence was interrupted by the bleating of flocks, and the low plaintive note of the rude gohar belonging to the herdsmen, who were seated round the flickering fires, regaling themselves after the labours of the day. Next morning, finding that Jacobs intended in a few days to visit the neighbourhood of Orange River, with the view of cutting timber for a house he was then building, I determined on waiting to accompany him. This part of the country is entirely destitute of trees calculated for such purposes, the farmers are consequently compelled to make long journeys to the banks of what they term the Great River, for the means of erecting comfortable dwellings.

While sitting one evening in the waggon, engaged with my writing materials, I heard a great bustle among the people residing on the spot, who were shouting "*Veld a beast,*" and on looking out I found that a herd of gnus had joined the oxen as the latter were driven homewards. An attempt was made to secure all the guns; but the moment a pursuit was commenced they bounded off, and soon made their escape.

On the 10th of October we set out on our journey

with three waggons and a numerous retinue, accompanied also by several favourite dogs of a large rough breed, that Jacobs usually took with him in his excursions, a few sheep to be slaughtered for our use during the journey, together with an extra *span* of oxen as relays on the road. Our track lay over a wide plain, interspersed with stunted bushes, and diversified with rich and showy heaths in full blossom, presenting altogether an animated picture, from the variety of wild creatures, such as spring-boks, quaggas, gnus, and ostriches, that were to be seen in every direction. We crossed the Brack River, the water of which was so salt that the oxen, although they had been travelling some hours without having allayed their thirst, refused to drink it.

Continuing our course in a northerly direction, we at length discovered that we had mistaken our path, and were obliged to return for some distance over the rough and stony road we had already traversed, while the heat was most oppressive, the thermometer being from noon to four o'clock at 90° in the shade. As the sun was going down we reached the tent of a farmer who had resorted to this spot with his cattle, in consequence of a scarcity of water at his farm, the Boors in this district being frequently compelled to wander with their cattle, in search of this indispensable element, during certain seasons of the year. On reaching this primitive abode, we were cordially greeted by the farmer, who,

coming up, invited us into his tent with all that open frankness and simplicity of manners so characteristic of the Dutch Boors, and which, associated with the pastoral character of the surrounding scene, reminded me forcibly of the descriptions I had read of the patriarchal ages.

The farmer's son accompanied Jacobs and myself at an early hour on the following morning, with another waggon, intending to bring a load of timber for his own use from the banks of the Orange River. Our journey lay over a vast and undulating plain, along the base of some very high mountains, the country around being covered with the richest verdure. Heaths of the most beautiful description were in full blossom, and, as our waggon crushed them in its progress, exhaled a most powerful aromatic perfume. This extraordinary fertility was attributable to the heavy rains that had fallen in the early part of the season, imparting to this usually desert country the appearance of an extensive and highly-cultivated garden. As, however, the hot weather had now begun to set in, it was not likely long to retain its hues of rich and varied vegetation.

About three o'clock in the afternoon we came up to the tent of farmer Breda, an extensive grazier, related to Jacobs, who was said to be one of the richest Boors in the Winterveld, having a flock of ten thousand sheep besides other cattle, though dwelling with his wife and family in tents; and con-

stantly migrating from one place to another for the sake of water. Breda stated that a few days before our arrival, some of his people had shot a very fine lion. He informed us, that lions were generally to be heard in the neighbourhood of an evening, particularly before rain or change of weather, when their roaring was most terrific; stating that his dogs and fires were his principal defence against their attacks, but that when they were really hungry, neither dogs nor anything else could prevent their depredations on the flocks. He observed, that he must expect to suffer occasionally from their incursions, as he was living in the lions' country, and the prey thus carried off he regarded as a tribute to the monarch of the forest.

After remaining here two or three hours, during which the thermometer stood in the shade at 96°, we proceeded, in order to avail ourselves of the cool of the evening, and *uitspanned* about midnight at Rooye Porte, so called from the nature of the soil, a kind of red sand, and Porte signifying the door, or opening, to the immense plain on which we afterwards entered. The next day we arrived at the banks of the Brack River near Kaabi's Kraal, where we found our stock of sheep considerably reduced, some having died from the excessive heat, and others being for the same reason unable to proceed. The dogs also had dropped off, one by one, seeking such shelter as was afforded by every straggling bush

during the ardency of the mid-day rays. On our arrival at this spot, we found that they had altogether deserted us, and were not afterwards to be found. We remained here during the night, forming our four waggons into a square, within which we enclosed the cattle, and encircling it with large fires to protect them from the lions. From the extremely rarefied state of the atmosphere, the stars shone with an extraordinary brilliancy, and the moon was exceedingly bright, as is usually the case in this quarter of the world. Our quiet was continually disturbed by the shrill cry of jackals and hyænas prowling about our encampment.

As we proceeded on the following morning over a continuation of the same plain, which was here covered with coarse high grass and rushes, about the middle of the day, Jacobs suddenly stopping his waggon, which was in advance, called out "*Gems-bok!*" I immediately took out my telescope, and saw a magnificent animal standing at some distance, gazing at our cavalcade. We instantly saddled our horses, and sent a Hottentot by a circuitous route to endeavour, if possible, to turn and drive it towards us. At first it bounded away with great speed; but on finding itself closely pursued, turned and rushed towards the Hottentot, who was considerably in advance of us. Being now within a hundred yards of the animal, I alighted from my horse and fired, when it bent its neck between its

fore-legs in the attitude of attack ; but, on my firing again, it fell dead. As soon as Jacobs came up, he began to examine a gland in the front of the throat about the size of an egg, by which he was enabled to judge of the condition of the animal, the flesh being considered superior to that of any other antelope. Soon after it was slain we observed a flight of vultures hovering over the spot, a circumstance the more remarkable as the plain was very extensive, and previously to my shooting the animal, not a bird was to be seen in the spacious and cloudless sky.

The son of a Boor, who accompanied me, stated that he once had a narrow escape from a gems-bok, which he was pursuing after he had wounded it: the enraged animal rushed towards him, and thrust its horns into the body of his horse, throwing him off with considerable violence. Klaas, one of my Hottentot servants, assured me that he once saw the carcasses of a lion and gems-bok, near the banks of the Gamka River, which appeared to have engaged each other in mortal combat. Jacobs also stated that an old lion would never offer to attack the gems-bok, and that he had himself witnessed this fact on several occasions.

The thermometer was now at 101°, and we began to experience the want of water. Our people eagerly followed the tracks of wild animals, under the impression that they would lead to a spring, but were disappointed in their expectations, all the pools



being dried up. Observing what I imagined to be a lake at some distance, I proceeded towards the spot, but found it merely covered with a saline incrustation, indicating where a brackish pool had once been, the water of which had been completely evaporated by the sun's rays, leaving a thin, glittering crust upon the surface, that produced this illusive effect. "This remarkable optical deception occurs under particular states of the atmosphere, on the verge of the horizon, and especially in warm climates upon extensive plains. Objects often appear with extraordinary elevation, double, or inverted. This singular phenomenon is obviously caused by a refraction of the rays of light passing through the atmosphere, the lower strata of which have different densities. When this effect is confined to the elevation of an object, the seamen call it looming. This singular play of vision has received from the French the appellation of *mirage*."

We had still hopes of finding water about eight hours' journey in advance, but that was a long period to suffer the misery of suspense; for after all there was no certainty of our meeting with a supply; and in case of disappointment no other probable resource remained until we should reach the Orange River. This made us look forward to the period of our arrival in that quarter with considerable anxiety.

Jacobs informed me that, upon a previous occasion, while crossing this spot towards evening, with a cavalcade of sixteen waggons, observing direct indications of lions in the vicinity, he advised a halt. The party, however, anxious to get forward, continued their course after the evening had closed, when the oxen suddenly gaining scent of lions, of which they have great terror, started off with the waggons in various directions, and many hours elapsed before the farmers could succeed in reassembling the vehicles thus dispersed over the plain, nor was this done without much difficulty and fatigue.

We proceeded on our journey for eight hours, but did not obtain the supply of water so anxiously looked for. The oxen were ready to drop from exertion and thirst, not having been unyoked for sixteen hours, we therefore determined to halt; but sleep was out of the question from the constant lowing of the distressed cattle, and the noise made by the drivers in endeavouring to keep them within the precincts of our encampment. Fires were obliged to be kept constantly blazing, as this part of the country was known to be much infested with lions; and for this reason, added to the difficulty of obtaining water, was seldom traversed. On taking our departure at day-break, it was amusing to observe the eagerness with which our Hottentots and Bushmen examined every cavity in the rocks at all likely to

contain a drop of water. Klaas, the driver of my own waggon, an ardent lover of the juice of the grape, was even lamenting that I had not emptied the wine *vaatche* at the last fountain, and substituted water, which had now become to him as well as to the rest far the most precious liquid ; thus showing how strangely circumstances may operate to manifest the importance of that which, in its abundance, we are apt to undervalue and disregard\*.

The Hottentots at last followed the track of some animals until they reached a muddy pool, which had evidently been frequented by lions during the night, from the spoor being quite fresh on its margin. The water, however, to their great vexation, was totally unfit to drink. Here we saw several hartebeests (*Antilope caama*), which are usually found in the plains, in small herds of from five to eight in number. They are very quick-sighted, and disappear on the least alarm. The mode adopted by the natives in obtaining them is as follows :—They muster a strong party, form themselves into a half-circle, covering an immense extent of land, then gradually close in upon the game, until they have completely surrounded it, when some of the party giving way cause an opening, towards which the

\* An English settler in Albany, being condemned by a magistrate to imprisonment, on bread and water, said, “ Thank you, Sir ; you have given me the two scarcest and most precious things in Africa.”

animals immediately rush, and are speared by those who happen to be nearest to them.

On ascending a small height we discovered the site of the long-looked-for pool, but to our great mortification and disappointment it was quite dry. We perceived about this time another gems-bok, and pursued it some time ; but it being scarcely possible to endure the scorching rays of the sun, we gave up the chase, and on our return, started a young one of the same species, which we succeeded in taking alive. It was the size of a small calf, extremely wild and vicious. About mid-day we arrived at an eminence overlooking the much-celebrated Orange River, the waters of which were unusually high. The sight of this broad and noble stream under such circumstances baffles description, and can only be duly appreciated by those who, like ourselves, may have traversed a parched and desert waste under the burning rays of an African sun. Not being able to take the waggon down beneath the shelter of the willows which thickly studded the banks, we had no alternative but to *uitspan* in a bed of loose scorching sand, without tree or bush to screen us from the sun. The cattle, as they were unyoked, rushed eagerly into the water to slake their raging thirst : indeed such was their impatience to plunge into the stream, that it was with the greatest difficulty they were restrained from

breaking out of their yoke. Many of them remained in the water for a considerable time, as if reluctant to leave it, and one in particular never recovered the excess in which it indulged.

Some Bushmen, having observed our arrival from the opposite bank, swam across to us on the following morning. After witnessing with much astonishment my operations in preparing, as a zoological specimen, the skin of the gems-bok, which I had shot on the previous day, they evinced the greatest eagerness to possess themselves of the flesh. No objection being made to their removing the fragments, which they regarded as a valuable prize, although by this time almost in a state of putrefaction, they speedily constructed a raft for conveying their treasure to the other side of the river. A large assemblage of disappointed vultures and other carrion birds followed closely in their train, thus indicating the course they pursued, after the party had crossed the stream, and were hidden from our view by the intervening bushes. A vulture, allured by the scent of the flesh which the Bushmen had left behind them, venturing too near our encampment, fell a sacrifice to my gun, and shortly after Jacob brought me its fellow. They proved to be the *Vautour Chincou* of Vaillant, and were the only specimens I ever met with.

On the 16th I had the tent taken down, and pitched under the willow-trees which skirt the banks of this splendid river as far as the eye can reach,

and never had I felt the sun more powerful than on this occasion, the thermometer standing at  $98^{\circ}$  in the shade of my tent on the river's bank, and rising to  $140^{\circ}$  on exposure to the sun. Feeling now particularly anxious to ascertain how far distant we might be from Griqua Town, and in what direction it was situated, I made every inquiry of the Bushmen, who gave me to understand that they knew nothing of such a place; but that their chief Waterboer's kraal was about a day's journey on the other side of the river. We here found extremely useful the services of an active young Bush-boy, named Cupido, who had accompanied the farmer's son from Winterveldt. He had been brought up with the Boors, and spoke Dutch; we therefore made him our interpreter. Having with some difficulty prevailed upon one of the native Bushmen to accompany me to the "Groote kraal" of their Chief, which I conjectured to be the place I was in quest of, the next thing to be done was to convey our horses over the river, here about four hundred yards in breadth, and with an extremely rapid current. The Bushmen had a superstitious dread of crossing at the spot where we were stationed, saying, that it was "evil water," which often drowned people. They insisted on our going a considerable distance farther up, where they affirmed the water was "good;" and where their women, from the opposite side, came down singing and clapping their hands, as if to soothe and pacify

the agitated stream, on which their husbands had embarked in their new capacities as horsemen. The Bushmen succeeded after much delay and trouble in swimming the horses across, although carried by the current a great distance down the river. While thus engaged, an immense cloud of locusts passed over our heads; they were the largest I had ever seen, and so numerous as literally to darken the sky, producing a dull rustling noise with their wings, as they continued their flight over our heads for upwards of an hour. The eastern writers have employed their pens in describing the desolating effects of these vast migratory flights of insects; but by none has the subject been so sublimely treated as by the prophet Joel, chapter ii. verse 2, &c.

The horses having been at length safely conveyed across the river, the Bushmen cut down several trees, and having stripped off the bark, fastened them together, forming a sort of raft, on which I was launched upon the stream. Notwithstanding the exertions of some of the best swimmers among them, the raft was carried rapidly down the current, while the noise caused by their vociferating and plunging about in the water, was quite deafening. Having partially dried my clothes at a fire, which they had kindled on our landing, I soon mounted my horse, being very desirous of pursuing my journey towards Waterboer's kraal; but as the sun had gone down when I ascended the height from the river, in com-

pany with my Bushman guide, the prospect was somewhat gloomy. An interminable waste lay stretched before us, bounded in the distance by towering mountains through which we had to pass. The moon, however, shed her gentle light around our path; and on my inquiring of the Bushman when we might expect to arrive at the kraal, pointing to the moon, as she shone resplendently above us, he gave me to understand that we should not reach our destination much before dawn. Feeling exceedingly thirsty, I asked if we should find any water in our route, when he pointed to a spot in the deep valley which lay before us, and said, "There is the *fountain*." We descended, and taking a cautious survey, lest some of those wild animals so frequently found in such situations should be there lurking in ambush, we allayed our thirst at the muddy pool, which he had described by so alluring a title, and which had, to all appearance, been recently disturbed by some animals passing through it.

Proceeding along the "dark kloof side," we entered again upon an open plain, when the Bushman's keen eye discerned the glimmering light of a fire amidst the bushes. Dismounting immediately, he began to reconnoitre with great caution, and to listen most attentively as he advanced, but the only sound that broke the prevailing stillness was the lowing of cattle, evidently not far from us. Fearful that we might be approaching some marauding tribe, he



seemed anxious to steal past them unobserved ; but not participating in his apprehension, I proceeded towards the light, and on coming up found a party of natives asleep round the dying embers of a fire, under the shelter of some tall bushes ; they had their guns by their sides, in readiness against surprise. We were enabled to approach and gaze upon the party without disturbing their slumbers, there being no dogs to give alarm,—rather an unusual circumstance among these people. On my uttering a loud shout, they sprang up and grasped their guns in an instant, glancing suspiciously round, and inquiring with some astonishment who we were, and whither we were bound. Perceiving that we were unarmed, and that there was nothing in our appearance to excite alarm, being satisfied also that we were alone, they sat down again, entered cheerfully into conversation, and afforded me the intelligence I desired respecting the place I was in search of. They mentioned that the country was in a very disturbed state, owing to a party of Griquas and Corannas having committed terrible depredations on a Zoulah Chief named Matakatzee, who had threatened vengeance in consequence, against all the Griquas ; they were therefore fearful of his coming down to attack them, although not one of their Chief's people had been concerned in the aggression. Having, after some entreaty, obtained a draught of water from a large ox-horn which the natives are in the habit of carrying

with them on crossing these desert plains, we left them to proceed on our journey :

“ Afar in the desert I love to ride,  
 With the silent Bush-boy alone by my side :  
 Away—away—in the wilderness vast,  
 Where the white man's foot hath seldom passed,  
 And the quiver'd Coranna or Bechuan  
 Hath rarely crossed with his roving clan :  
 A region of emptiness howling and drear,  
 Which man hath abandoned from famine and fear ;  
 Which the snake and the lizard inhabit alone,  
 With the twilight bat from the yawning stone ;  
 Where grass, nor herb, nor shrub takes root,  
 Save poisonous thorns that pierce the foot ;  
 And here while the night-winds around me sigh,  
 And the stars burn bright in the midnight sky,  
 As I sit apart by the desert stone,  
 Like Elijah at Horeb's cave alone,  
 ‘ A still small voice ’ comes through the wild  
 (Like a father consoling his fretful child),  
 Which banishes bitterness, wrath, and fear,  
 Saying—Man is distant, but God is near.”

Crossing the bed of a dried-up river, studded thickly with trees and bushes on either side, we disturbed a number of *pintados*, which had taken roost among the branches. Their sudden rising, as we sauntered heedlessly along, startled our horses, and threw us for the moment into considerable confusion. The ground in this neighbourhood was in many places so completely undermined by the burrows of various small animals, such as jennets or pole-cats, and ichneumons, that the horses sank up to their knees almost at every step. The moon now began

rapidly to descend, and as I felt fatigued, and saw no sign of the village of which we were in search—although from the number of hours we had been riding I imagined it could not be far distant,—I inquired anxiously whether we were proceeding in the right direction; but I experienced great difficulty in making my Bushman companion comprehend my questions rightly, his constant replies being nothing more than *Yah, yah!* to the most opposite inquiries. Shortly afterwards, however, we came up to a ridge of mountains, and riding along their base, at length, to my great satisfaction, discovered a row of huts, which were known by the name of old Griqua Town. Hearing the trampling of our horses, the inmates rushed out, eagerly demanding who we were, and it afterwards appeared they were under great apprehension of our being the forerunners of some evil tidings connected with the threatened visit of Matakatzee.

About an hour after midnight we reached the Mission-house, and roused the family of Mr. Wright, the Missionary, with whom I had been acquainted at Cape Town, and who were agreeably surprised at seeing me, having, from the disturbed state of the country, and the unseasonable hour of my arrival, anticipated other less peaceful visitors. When I had delivered the letters from Cape Town, of which I was the bearer, and which, from the few opportunities of communication with the colony, were very

acceptable, I retired to rest, completely overcome with the fatigues of the day. Here I was suddenly attacked with a violent bilious fever, occasioned by my long exposure to a burning sun, while engaged with so much difficulty and exertion in getting the horses across the river, and by riding afterwards in damp clothes during the night, having had no opportunity of changing them in the course of my journey.

---

## CHAPTER II.

Berends's Attack on Matakatzee—Description of Griqua Town—Waterboer—Bechuana Village—Litakou—Female Agriculturists—Crocodiles—Inhabited Tree.

FROM Mr. Wright I learned the following particulars of the disturbances occasioned by the attack of Berends's party on the Zoulah Chief. Berends had for some time been adopting secret measures to make a formidable expedition against this powerful tribe of Caffers in the interior; and from the certainty of conquest, and the immense number of cattle possessed by the Zoulahs, had succeeded in drawing after him, together with the Bergenaars, a large body of Griquas, Corannas, Bushmen, and Bechuanas, accompanied also by several traders from the colony, who were professedly on a hunting expedition.

The Commando left Berends's place about the beginning of June, and proceeded on horseback until within three days' journey of the Zoulahs, where the waggons were to remain during the attack. From this place a letter was written by a trader, stating, that, on the 11th of July, Berends dispatched six hundred horsemen, armed with guns, and one thousand foot, to attack the Zoulahs, whilst he and some others remained by the waggons. On the 16th,

news arrived at Griqua Town of the defeat of Berends's Commando, with great loss. This statement, however, was not generally believed in the country, as nothing had been anticipated but the certain destruction of the poor Caffers, and an immense booty, to be enjoyed on the return of the rapacious murderers.

On the 19th, one of the traders above-mentioned arrived at Campbell, and made the following statement. That Berends's Commando had attacked the Zoulahs, who fought bravely, but that at length the followers of Berends had succeeded, as they thought, in destroying all the Caffers, and had driven away the whole of their cattle that were to be found. The second night after the attack, when the victors were enjoying themselves, securely as they presumed, on the fruits of their violence, the Chief of the Zoulahs, with an army of reserve, sallied from the adjacent mountains, to which he had retired on hearing of the approach and intentions of Berends. He fell upon the Commando, and soon succeeded in routing the marauders, killing four hundred of the Griquas, wounding several, and cutting off a great many Corannas and Bechuanas. He retook all the cattle, together with two hundred and fifty horses, and three hundred guns of the Commando, killed the horses, and on the following morning burned them with his dead and wounded enemies in a heap.

The Caffer Chief then sent a message, threatening

to pay Berends a visit during the next moon, and it was feared that if he put this threat into execution serious consequences would result to all the missions in that quarter. Berends had returned with the remainder of his waggons and people, in a discomfited state; and considerable anxiety was manifested as to his future proceedings. It was a matter of no small satisfaction that Griqua Town was entirely free from the guilt of this shameful outrage, as not a single individual residing within the district of Waterboer was in any way connected with the affair.

Mr. Archbell, whose track is marked out on the map, visited Matakatzee in 1829, and gave me an interesting account of his interview with that Chief, the particulars of which I insert in his own words—“After travelling twelve days from Plaat Berg, through a depopulated country, I came to an immense nation, who call themselves Zoulahs, who, at a reasonable estimate, cannot be fewer than from sixty to eighty thousand. Their towns are numerous, and densely spread over a country two hundred miles in extent, and one of the finest ever beheld. They are under a Chief named Matakatzee, a brother of the late great Chaka, from whom he fled, with many followers, about twelve years ago.”

“When he left Chaka he had but few cattle, but having made his way into the interior by force of arms, he took the property of its tribes, some of whom he annihilated, others he took prisoners, and

allowed them to live tributary to him, thereby increasing his strength.

His riches are immense, consisting principally of cattle, which have been computed at eighty thousand. The tyranny of Chaka and his own ambition caused him to fly. He knows Fako well, and has heard of Dapa and Hintza. He is also acquainted with all the affairs of Natal, and the circumstances of Chaka's death. Chaka during his life was a troublesome enemy to Matakatzee, and since his death his successor, Dingaan, has not been less so.

Matakatzee is a most despotic monarch, and has his people in the greatest subjection, not excepting his mother and brothers. They approach him on their knees, or in a low bending posture. If he move from his seat he must be thus revered, and also when he resumes it. He has obtained such influence among his people, that their very feelings seem to be controlled by him; so that nothing delights them that does not delight him, and if he appears gratified they are in extasy. He was much pleased with my visit, and his people say they never saw him in higher spirits. His person is fine, and his manners authoritative and commanding. His age is about thirty. This people speak the Caffer language. Mr. Caywers who was with me speaks broken Caffer, and could make them understand tolerably well. As many Bechuanas are subject to this tribe, interpreters are easy to be obtained; hence we



found no difficulty in conversing with them. They cultivate the ground to a great extent, having abundance of Caffer and Indian corn, melons and pumpkins, and two species of vine were exceedingly abundant wherever we travelled. I have seldom seen a richer field for a botanist. They make a great deal of beer, which is sometimes brought to the king in fifty large calabashes at once. On our approaching within three days of the town, of which the king was made acquainted, we were met by several women, who were sent by him, each with a calabash of beer for us. This he directed them to carry by the side of the waggon for our use, that we might be able to refresh ourselves whenever we found it needful. The art of distilling is happily yet unknown among them. They have no sheep, except a few stolen from the Bechuanas; nor have they any goats, but they possess great numbers of horned cattle. Their houses are constructed of mats.

On the arrival of our waggons, this heathen king did everything in his power to excite our admiration. He assembled his people, an immense concourse, who danced and sang, slaughtered cattle, and drank beer to an extent that the oldest of his people said they had never been allowed to do on any previous occasion. The king, never having seen a waggon before, was highly amused with its motions. He was also much gratified with the stateliness and speed of

our horses. He has sixty wives, whom he holds in a state of the lowest degradation.

Whilst with Matakatzee, I took the opportunity of ascertaining how far the residence of white men among his people would be acceptable, and endeavoured to show the difference between those who visit a country for the sake of worldly gain, and those who reside among them for the purpose of teaching them the way to true happiness, or, as our Bechuanas express it, "the way to sleep well."

He had heard of my residence with Sevonello; and two of his counsellors have just returned from the Kruman, which has had a salutary effect. He appeared to be exceedingly anxious for the residence of white men and Missionaries within his territories, "for then," said he, "they will tell me the good news of God. I shall be able to sleep well, and people will come to see them, and bring horses, &c. and we shall be like Sevonello and Batlassis.

The following particulars but too sadly verify the enormities reported to have been practised by the Corannas on the unoffending natives residing in the more remote parts of the interior. They are extracted from a journal kept by Mr. Archbell, during his travels in the Bechuana country, in September, 1833."

14th. "During my ride to-day," he remarks, "I saw a foot-path leading to the summit of a high mountain; curiosity led me to trace it; and inviting

some of the people to accompany me, we ascended to the top which presented a plain. On one side stood a few forsaken villages, the disorder of which afforded evident marks of having been sacked by the marauding parties, by whom the whole of this country has been pretty well depopulated. The houses had in them the furniture and utensils usual to the country, and a few melons (*makatani*). The inhabitants seem to have fled with precipitation, so that they were not able to take any of their goods with them. The whole presented ideas of horror and devastation. Perhaps the inhabitants may have fled to some other part of the country, but the probability is that they have been murdered, otherwise they would return and take possession of their property.

15th. In the afternoon of this day we discovered three persons, walking along a precipice near the summit of the mountain nearest to which we had halted. We beckoned to them to come down, but they regarded us not. We then sent a man up to them, to invite them to come down, who having told them who we were, and what was our object, was able to prevail with one of them to accompany him to our waggons. The account he gave of the state of the country was truly distressing. 'Seldom,' said he, 'do we see horses or waggons, but with those that have hostile intentions, and two commandos passed only two days ago. The Corannas have got our cattle and our substance, and

now they will not allow us to live. They take our children to sell, and our women are barbarously murdered with their knives. They begrudge them even a bullet. We are obliged now to live on the tops of the mountains, and hide ourselves in the caves. Not one of us dare descend to the plains. About a week ago," he continued, "I was looking for food on the plains, and a party of horsemen got close to me before I saw them, so that I could not escape. They asked me if any cattle were to be found, and where the people lived. I told them there was no cattle left in the land, and that the people were all killed. For this they gave me the beating, the marks of which you see all over me; they also kept me with them to press out of me any information as to persons who did still possess cattle, and would probably have killed me, but I escaped in the night.' His artless and doleful tale affected us much, and desirous of changing the subject for a while, we told him it was the day on which we served our God; to which he answered that he saw the clouds arise so thick this morning, that he thought they indicated something particular; now he should know also, that when the clouds were so black it was God's day, and he should pray to Him.

17th. Having with much difficulty learned from a man who came to us yesterday the position of some of the remaining inhabitants of these parts, we prevailed, by the promise of a large present, upon two

other natives who had joined us during the night, to show us the way to a village where the Chief called Mosema lived, who they said was yet alive, but without people. We travelled till sunset, but did not arrive at the place.

As the country was exceedingly broken, and in many parts impassable for waggons, we set out with horses; and after riding the greatest part of the day we came to the foot of a huge mountain, nearly equal in height to Table Mountain at the Cape. On the top or on the shelves of the rock about its summit, resides the chief of this once numerous people. The Chief was not at home, and his brother, who is second in command, being apprised of our coming, had descended to the foot of the mountain to meet us. The day being far spent, and having to return to our waggon, we could not enter into any conversation, but briefly mentioned to him the design of our visit, and, inviting him to our waggons, we left him, and about nine o'clock at night reached our waggons.

19th. We were visited to day at our waggons by the chief's brother, who appeared duly authorised to treat with us. This individual, as well as his counsellors in attendance, seemed much elated with our view of forming a residence in their country, which he said was now nearly depopulated, and could not hold out more than another year. They had not *slept, he said, for many years*, nor had they

been allowed the smallest respite from their sufferings. They had been hunted from rock to rock, and when they had no cattle to satisfy the rapacity of their murderers, they were required to give the produce of their lands, the offspring of their bodies, and frequently their own lives. This tale of woe, related by this interesting Chief, was truly affecting. He continued with us during the night.

20th. The Chief's brother accompanied us to the surrounding fountains. On our way we met a party of Bashuta, who were coming to acquaint Mosema of a Coranna commando, that had made an attack upon them early in the morning. The commando, they said, had taken their few remaining cattle, with all their children, and had killed five men with a number of women. They left them at their town feasting upon the produce of their year's labour. They sat down upon the ground while they related the sad story, and seemed as if spent by the exercise of body and mind."

The following extract from the letter of a gentleman, on whose information full reliance may be placed, details some atrocious acts lately perpetrated by Stuurman, on the inoffensive Bechuanas:—

“ We have not heard of Stuurman for some time. In his late attempt to enter the Bechuana country, he murdered perhaps hundreds of poor people at the Long Mountains, on his route from the Orange River to the bed of the Kruman River, about forty

miles west of the Missionary Stations. He did not shoot any, at least but few, but took hold of them in cold blood and butchered them with knives, or any other instrument he had at hand. He even made the men cut the throats of their own wives and children, others he packed in huts, to which he set fire, and few indeed escaped to tell the tale of woe.

This horrid barbarity was perpetrated, not with a view to procure anything, for the sufferers had nothing; but in order to prevent his approach being known in this quarter, and to clear the road for future expeditions\*.”

---

Griqua Town is situated about 29° south latitude, and 24° east longitude: its population amounted, at the period of my visit, to about one thousand seven hundred persons, consisting, in nearly equal proportions, of Griquas and Bechuanas. The spot selected for the present Missionary Station is in every respect much better adapted for a village, and the ground under cultivation is of a far more promising character, than the barren and rocky site on which it originally stood, and which is now entirely deserted. The country round presents a very cheerless prospect, not a tree of any description being visible except those planted in the Missionary's garden; while the low stunted bushes thinly scattered over the sandy plain appear parched and withered

\* South African Commercial Advertiser, 8th of February, 1834.

by the heat. I observed a couple of tame ostriches belonging to the natives stalking about and feeding in an enclosure adjoining some cottages near the Station.

About thirty years ago, the Griquas are described to have been " a herd of wandering and naked savages, subsisting by plunder and the chase. Their bodies were daubed with red paint, their heads loaded with grease and shining powder, with no covering but the filthy kaross over their shoulders. They were without morals, without knowledge, or any traces of civilization, and wholly abandoned to drunkenness, witchcraft, licentiousness, and all the consequences which arise from the unchecked growth of such vices." And yet the despised and traduced Missionary, after wandering about with these people year after year, enduring hardships, sufferings, and dangers, at length succeeded in inducing them to settle at Klaarwater, the spot near which Griqua Town is now established, and where, under the judicious and zealous exertions of Mr. Wright, I found the settlement rapidly advancing in civilization and improvement. The inhabitants, incited by the example and encouragement of their Chief Waterboer, were busily engaged in building comfortable dwellings, on a scale much superior to anything of the kind hitherto seen in that quarter of the world. The party I met on the evening before my arrival had in fact been cutting timber for the same purpose. A substantial school-room,



of commodious dimensions, built of stone, and neatly thatched, was just on the point of completion, and was also intended to be used as a Church. A new Mission-house had recently been erected, a respectable and convenient building that would not have discredited an English village.

Waterboer appears to be a man of considerable acuteness and intelligence, exceedingly desirous of promoting the moral and religious welfare of his people. The Griquas at this Station are becoming much more settled and industrious, their migratory habits having been to a great extent abandoned. Marriage rites had been instituted and regarded; many had been taught to read; religion and useful knowledge was already widely disseminated, and nearly two hundred children attended daily instruction in the school. A considerable portion of land had been brought under cultivation; water had with much labour and ingenuity been conveyed by channels for the purpose of irrigation; the comforts and convenience of good dwellings began to be duly appreciated, and several substantial stone houses had already been erected. In short, altogether, a state of general improvement was perceptible throughout the whole establishment.

The peaceable and friendly conduct evinced by Waterboer towards the tribes in the interior, had induced numbers to quit their own turbulent and distracted territories, with their cattle and little pro-

perty, and settle at Griqua Town under his protection; so that at a spot not far from the Mission-house, set apart expressly for the use of these new comers, might now be seen specimens of nearly all the various tribes which constitute the Bechuana nation. Many improvements in the neatness and peculiar style of constructing their huts were strikingly observable; but these have been so accurately described by Burchell and other travellers, that any further account would be here unnecessary.

Mr. Moffatt had recently returned to Litakou through this place from Cape Town, where he had been superintending the printing of his translation of St. Luke's Gospel, and other books, into the Sichuana language. He had taken with him a small printing press, which was likely to prove of very important service in evangelizing the heathen population of that extensive and interesting country.

“The customs of the Bechuanas differ little from those of the Caffers. The resemblance is obvious to a person visiting both tribes. It may be seen in their physiognomy, their athletic forms, and their language. Scarcely a doubt can remain as to their having had one common origin. The Bechuana women, in the same manner as the Caffer females, build their houses, and for the most part work the soil. The men take charge of the cattle. Still the Bechuanas are in advance of the Caffers in point of civilization; they are more active and more industrious, possessing

also a greater variety of character and taste. These advantages probably arise from the circumstances of their living together in much greater numbers. Continually exposed to the incursions of their enemies, they have been compelled to associate for the purposes of mutual defence; and so anxious is their disposition at present to live in large communities, that, were they sufficiently numerous, they would build towns as large as London. The country is not now so populous as it was before the invasion of the Mantatees. Shortly after that event, the Chief of the Bechuanas, Matabee, established himself with part of his people, on the banks of the Falls River, where he still remains, the other part of the tribe being under the control of his brother Mahura, who resides at Litakou, forty-five miles north-east of Kruman. All the tribes which speak the Sichuana language are generally comprehended under the name of Bechuanas.

“ The manner in which the females cultivate the soil is not unworthy of notice. They may be seen, perhaps fifty together, working in a line on the same spot, and holding their *pioch*, or spade, in the hand, ready to strike it into the ground on a given signal for commencing, their appearance at a distance being that of a military company under arms. Whilst at work, they chant a kind of song as the means of animating them amidst their toils, repeating at the same time the names of every animal with which

they are acquainted. The origin of this custom of repeating the names of animals is supposed to be found in the following practice:—when a Bechuana has succeeded in obtaining game, his wife invites her neighbours to partake in the pleasures of the feast, on condition that, when the period arrives for cultivating the ground, those who were guests and had shared in her hospitality should assist in working the soil.

I deeply regretted that my state of health would not admit of my journey being extended, as I had proposed, to Litakou, which might have been reached on horseback in two days from Griqua Town. Independent of its importance as a Missionary Station, Litakou has become a place of considerable interest, from the circumstance of its being the last civilized spot to the northward of the Colony. From Litakou many exploring parties and speculative traders have ventured to penetrate the thickly populated regions lying beyond it.

Messrs. Schoon and M'Luckie, in 1829, penetrated to the eastward of Kurrichaine, which is situated about two hundred miles to the north-east of Litakou, and the following is a brief outline of their journey, containing some curious particulars of an inhabited tree, which they met with in that part of the country.

East of Kurrichaine, or properly Chuan, they discovered the river *Moriqua*, which rises in the

south, between the 25th and 26th degrees of latitude, and 29th and 30th degrees of longitude, takes a north-easterly course, and about one hundred miles from the ford, enters a high ridge of mountains. From hence, according to the account given by the natives, it flows into the sea, through the country of the Mantatees. It is about forty yards broad, the waters are rapid, clear, and good, and are well stocked with fish, which affords an article of food. This river is infested by alligators, which are very formidable to the natives, by whom they are called "Quaina." Schoon and his party killed one measuring sixteen feet: in the stomach was found part of a trek-touw, a pair of shoes, and a dog bitten in two. About seventy miles to the eastward, the range of mountains takes a direction nearly north and south, their general height being about seven hundred feet. At the distance of fourteen miles to the south along the base of these mountains is a place called "Ongorutcie Fountain," where there is a large tree containing seventeen conical huts. These are used as dormitories, being beyond the reach of the lions, which, since the incursion of the Mantatees, when so many thousands of persons were massacred, have become very numerous in the neighbourhood, and destructive to human life. The branches of these trees are supported by forked sticks or poles, and there are three tiers or platforms on which the huts are constructed. The lowest is nine

feet from the ground, and holds ten huts, the second, about eight feet high, has three huts, and the upper story, if it may be so called, contains four. The ascent to these is made by notches cut in the supporting poles, and the huts are built with twigs thatched with straw, and will contain two persons conveniently. On a former excursion these travellers visited several deserted villages built in a similar manner between the Morigua and Leutlecan Rivers, as well as in other places. These, however, were erected on stakes instead of trees, about eight feet above the ground, and about forty feet square, larger in some places, and containing about seventy or eighty huts. The inhabitants sit under the shade of these platforms during the day, and retire at night to the huts above\*.

The accompanying drawing of this inhabited tree was taken by Mr. Moffatt of Litakou, who also visited this spot. The natives represented in the foreground have been added to complete the picture, and to show how slight and inefficient their weapons are, to defend themselves from the attacks of those fierce invaders by which they are surrounded and so liable to be assailed.

\* South African Quarterly Journal, September, 1830.



THE INHABITED TREE.

THE INHABITED TREE.

Drawn on Stone by T. M. Burgess.





## CHAPTER III.

Murder of Lober and Son—Moonlight Scene on the Banks of the Orange River—Bushman's Kraal—Anecdotes of Bushmen—Thunder-storm—Ostrich Nest—Melancholy Accident—Gemsboks—Tremendous Hail-storm—Awkward situation—Enraged Farmer—Immense Flight of Locusts—Beaufort—Zwartberg—Hex River—Village of Worcester—Tulbagh—General condition of the border Boors.

CONSIDERING that, under present circumstances, it would be advisable to avail myself of the company of my friend Jacobs, whom I had left cutting timber on the banks of the Orange River, I determined on rejoining him; when Mr. Wright very kindly offered his waggon, and accompanied me. He informed me that, near the place where I had left my waggon, a farmer named Lober had halted about twelve months before with his sheep, when a party of marauding Bushmen and Corannas came up and murdered him and his son, carrying off his wife, together with the sheep, far into the interior. The woman ultimately escaped, and made her way to Graaff-Reinet, where she related the particulars of the outrage. The principal concerned in this atrocious murder was a Coranna, and was at this time known to be residing with other marauders in the neighbourhood of the Haart River, making no secret of

the share he had taken in the transaction ; but from some unaccountable indifference on the part of the proper authorities, no means had been adopted for his apprehension, although, in the first instance, every requisite information had been supplied by Waterboer, at considerable trouble and expense, for which he had hitherto received neither remuneration nor thanks.

The heat was so oppressive that about mid-day we halted on a plain, the grazing-place of some of the Bechuanas residing at Griqua Town, and sought refuge from the sun's burning rays under the shade of a few mimosas. During our progress in the afternoon, we saw several ostriches waving their white plumes as they scoured along the desert, and the Hottentot driver shot at one which he said he was sure he had wounded ; it appeared, however, to suffer no inconvenience from the ball, the only effect of which seemed to be that of accelerating its flight.

Late in the evening we arrived on the banks of the river, and succeeded with some difficulty in getting our waggon down to the Bushman's kraal from which I had set out. The moon rose above the trees, and, as she gradually mounted the heavens, shed her mild beams over the delicate mimosa and willow trees by which we were surrounded ; whilst a gentle breeze slightly agitated the beautiful foliage of this sylvan retreat, and the majestic river, as it flowed rapidly past, reflected on its broad surface the

spangled brilliancy of the heavens. The oxen were fastened to the waggon—a large fire was kindled, around which the Bushmen were collected, when Mr. Wright, accompanied by the natives, sang a hymn in the Dutch language, at the conclusion of which the little group of sable worshippers bowed themselves to the ground, while the pervading silence of the calm and lovely night was only interrupted by the voice of supplication which ascended from this new and solemn place of prayer.

On the following morning I took an opportunity of visiting the Bushman's Kraal, where I found that Stoffel Jacobs had distributed several sheep during my absence, which were now secured within a small enclosure of thorny bushes. Their huts, situated in the midst of a thicket, were of the most simple construction, consisting merely of a few stakes driven into the earth, forming a circle of five or six feet in diameter, curved in arches at the top, bound together by boughs and twigs, and partially covered with a few coarse mats, the height being about four feet. In the interior were suspended their bows and poisoned arrows: on the floor lay scattered amidst the ashes the broken shells of several ostrich eggs: the men sat round the fire smoking their "dacha," apparently in a state of the greatest apathy: the countenances of the women, some of whom carried infants at their backs, were disfigured with grease and dirt: the elder children running

about in a state of nudity, presented altogether a scene of the greatest wretchedness.

These people appeared to have no visible means of subsistence beyond the locusts and wild honey, with the latter of which the cliffs and holes of the rocks at this time abounded ; yet, notwithstanding all their sufferings from poverty and want, so strong is their attachment to their native wilds, that famine itself cannot induce them to consent to abandon their roving state of life. The following lines, elicited by an unsuccessful attempt to induce a Bushman family to proceed with the author into the colony, are strikingly characteristic of the fact:—

“ O'er these wide wastes, immeasurably wild,  
 Roves the poor Bushman—Nature's rudest child !  
 For him few joys the arts of life supply,  
 Born but to starve and unregretted die :  
 Sport of the elements—his life a span,  
 Foe-girt around by unrelenting man,  
 Prey to all perils, with no power to save,  
 He falls their helpless victim to the grave.

No festive board invites his famish'd form,  
 Nor roof to shelter from th' impending storm ;  
 But the grey rock a shelvy structure rears,  
 Its moss-grown cavern of a thousand years ;  
 There his worn hands a scanty meal prepare  
 Of hard-sought bulbs—a coarse and bitter fare :  
 Repast unsocial, where his plaintive voice  
 And hollow eye were never known rejoice ;  
 But his quick ear, for ever on the watch,  
 Cautiously eager ev'ry sound to catch,

Starts at the breeze—the herald of his fear,  
 While his quick hand convulsive grasps the spear.  
 Such his best hours of ease; and thus are sped  
 Whole days of danger—nights of ceaseless dread.

Yet would he leave the scenes where childhood grew,<sup>5</sup>  
 And where (sad boon!) his early breath he drew?  
 No! proffer all you value, but in vain  
 You try to lure him from his native plain:  
 Though wrung by fear and famine, yet afar  
 Pleased unrestrain'd to tune his wild gorâh,  
 He roams contented, nor e'er dreams, than this,  
 Earth can impart a higher share of bliss.

Say, then, what spell within a scene so rude  
 Can bind the savage to his solitude?  
 What mighty talisman can make him scorn  
 Lean want, pale terror, and the heedless storm?  
 Search well the heart, it lies, where'er we roam,  
 In the warm charms of freedom and of home."

J. C. C.

Sparmann, who travelled through this country in 1773, mentions having been assured by many of the colonists, that their Bushmen of either sex, used in stormy weather to abuse the thunder with the words "*t' guzeri, t' gaunatsi,*" sorcerer, imp, and other reproachful expressions; and at the same time, with their shoes, or anything else that was at hand, menace in a furious manner, and bid defiance to the flashes of lightning and peals of thunder that exploded over their heads. In allusion to this, Mr. Rose remarks,—“Imagine the pigmy wretches, of unearthly ugliness, standing at the mouth of their cavern, watching the gathering tempest, as

the lurid clouds darkened above them, while the earth shared the gloom of the heavens; and when, after the breathless hush, the lightning's flash burst with its dread blazing light, and the thunder echoed through all the hills, imagine these savages, their umber faces lighted up to more fiend-like expression in the blaze, threatening the storm with their furious gestures, and with impotent menacings breathing their wild curses against the thunder!"

On taking leave of these Bushmen, I found that the Griquas had cut down trees and made a raft, on which I was to re-cross the river. By these means, together with the assistance of some excellent swimmers whom Mr. Wright had kindly brought for the purpose of rendering their assistance, I safely regained the opposite bank. Having remunerated the Bushmen for their trouble and fidelity with several little articles calculated for their use, among which tobacco seemed to be the most highly prized, and having also purchased from them several bags of honey, which they had used much exertion to collect, I set out with Jacobs the following afternoon on our return to the colony.

We had not advanced far before we were overtaken by a tremendous thunder-storm, the rain coming down with such violence that the oxen were unable to proceed till it had subsided; and the parched and thirsty land becoming literally in a short space of time a standing pool. We made the

best of our way to the Brack River, when the storm had subsided, much enjoying the refreshing coolness which it had occasioned. On our route we disturbed a female ostrich from her nest, in which we found from twenty to thirty eggs, a number, however, frequently exceeded, and even doubled. It is much to be regretted that more attention is not paid to their preservation, the feathers of these birds being such a valuable article of export.

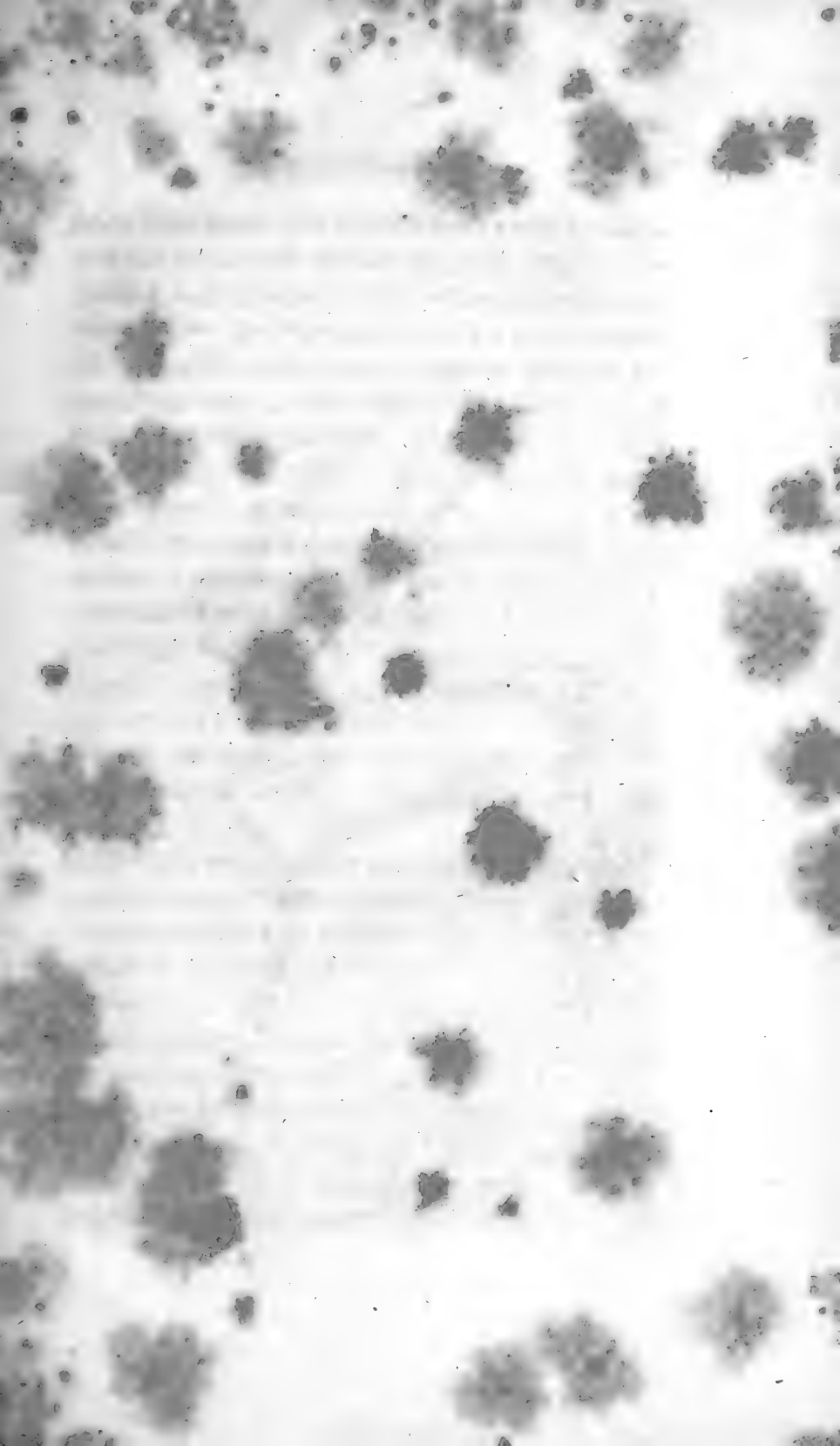
Within a short distance of Rooye Poorte we came up during the afternoon with a large herd of springboks; and Jacobs afterwards fancied, from the accelerated pace of the oxen, that they must have caught scent of a lion at no great distance. The next day we met a Trek Boor, with his cattle, who informed us that eleven lions had passed the day before in a troop, along the route we were pursuing.

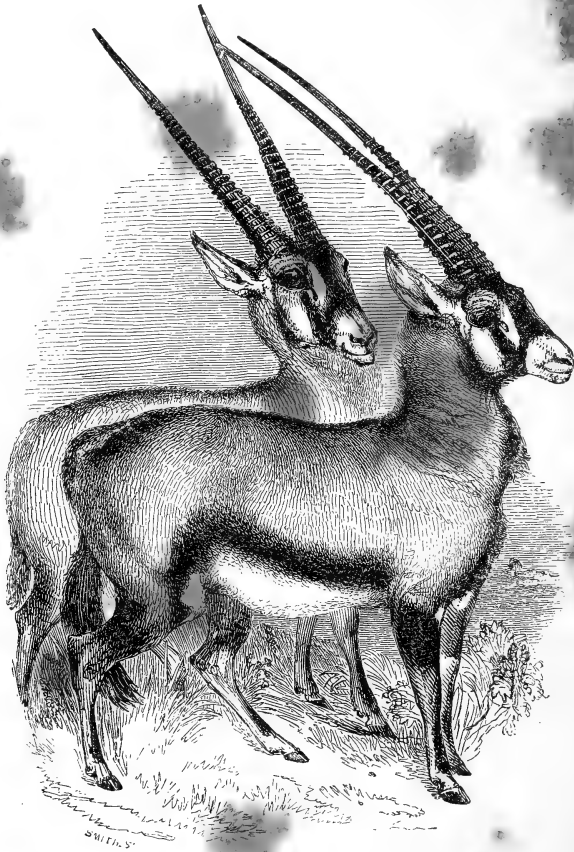
The sun was very powerful, and the dry, scorching winds were almost suffocating. Here I sustained a severe shock from an unfortunate occurrence, which I shall ever remember with the most painful feelings of regret. While lying in my waggon, enfeebled by indisposition, I observed Cupido, the Bush-boy in the service of the farmer who accompanied us, spring from the foot-board, on our coming to a rough part of the road, as if to assist the driver, who had previously jumped down to guide the oxen. The boy being missed, after some time had elapsed, it was

supposed that he had gone to seek honey, with which the rocks in this neighbourhood abounded; and we reached the farmer's dwelling early in the afternoon, without having seen or heard of him. On the arrival, however, of the herdsman with the sheep some hours afterwards, he brought us the melancholy intelligence that the waggon, as he supposed, must have gone over the poor boy's head, and killed him on the spot, as he had found the body lying in the track, with the head crushed and dreadfully swollen. I was much affected by this distressing circumstance, which tended to increase the depression of spirits my indisposition had induced, and it was long ere I recovered the shock of that unhappy accident.

On the following day we reached the farm of Stoffel Jacobs, where I remained nearly a week to recruit my strength, a measure the more necessary, as the weather continued excessively hot, and I had still a long journey to accomplish. I was lamenting to Jacobs how little I had added to my specimens of natural history on this excursion, when he said that I should not leave his house until he had procured for me a female gems-bok, *Antilope oryx*, which I had been very desirous to obtain. His sons were accordingly dispatched to the plain with instructions, if they could find any of these antelopes, to use their endeavours to turn them in the direction of the farm. They had not been gone







THE GEMS-BOK.

## SHOOT THREE GEMS-BOKS.

55

many hours before the shouting of the people and the barking of the dogs announced the approach of something unusual, which proved to be two of these antelopes, a female and its young one, driven by the men towards the house. I immediately prepared my gun, and went out to meet them. By this time, the antelope, finding itself so closely pursued, stood in an attitude of defence, striking at the dogs, three of which it severely wounded. I fired, and lodged a ball just behind its shoulder, when it fell and died. Coming up to the young one, which had endeavoured to escape, I shot that also; Jacobs's elder son had, in the interval, while at some distance from the place, killed a male, which was in company with the others when he first discovered them.

The female was the most beautiful creature of the antelope species I had ever beheld, its skin being particularly sleek and soft, and its limbs most exquisitely proportioned; its marks were much more vivid and distinct than those of the male.

Having prepared and packed the skins of the gems-boks, I left the hospitable abode of Stoffel Jacobs, who regretted on parting that we had not been successful in taking a lion, but assured me that he would not fail to send me the skin of the next he shot. Towards the close of our first day's journey from this place, the clouds, which had been gathering throughout the morning, suddenly opened, and, discharging their watery burthens, deluged the

country with rain. Loud peals of thunder followed the most vivid flashes of lightning; and hailstones, of an unusual size, beat with such violence upon our oxen, that it was with great difficulty the driver could keep them under control. We were compelled, therefore, to bivouack on this plain, the rain continuing during the night, accompanied with strong gales, so as to prevent the possibility of enjoying a fire. I never remember having felt the cold so severely in this country as on the present occasion. The thermometer in the morning was as low as 41°, an extraordinary change in the temperature from that under which I had lately so much suffered.

On approaching Bushman's Poorte, I observed an immense flight of those elegant blue cranes, *Anthropoides virgo*: they were feeding on a sloping bank, and it was quite amusing to observe their playful evolutions. Returning to the waggon, I found the Hottentot driver had discovered a bottle of spirits which had been left there, and that its influence had disabled him from driving the oxen through the river; I was, therefore, under the necessity of taking the whip into my own hands, which, from its immense length, I found no easy matter to manage: I succeeded, however, in getting across, and we *uitspanned* on the opposite bank. The intoxicated Hottentot took up his "*kabaas*" and departed, evidently much incensed at my interference. I was not without apprehension that the conductor, who had also begun

to show symptoms of insubordination, would have followed his example, and left me entirely alone in this desert place, where I must have remained until some chance assistance could have been procured.

We proceeded onwards until we reached the Brack River, a little before sunset. On descending a narrow ford, where the water was shallow, our waggon unfortunately stuck fast in the mud, when we were compelled to unload it, and dig a path through the bank, which was rather steep. After having been thus occupied till a late hour, we found the oxen still unable to move it. I mounted my horse, and rode to the nearest farm in search of additional cattle, but was informed on my arrival, by the proprietor, Hans Voneer, that his oxen were out grazing, and that he could not render me any assistance till the morning. I returned, therefore, to the waggon, which remained in the middle of the river during the night, at the risk of being carried away by any sudden rising of the stream.

The night was dark and gloomy ; the thunder and lightning, being accompanied by violent winds and heavy rain, rendered our situation still more unpleasant. In the morning the oxen were missing, and on the farmer coming up with his own span to assist me, I learned from him that mine had strayed into his corn-land, and had greatly injured his crop, a circumstance which was exceedingly mortifying

to us both. The oxen of Voneer having extricated the waggon, I accompanied him to his house, and having satisfied him for the injury done to his land by my cattle, and paid him for the assistance rendered by his own, I continued my journey, notwithstanding a very heavy rain, for I was particularly anxious to reach Beaufort. On arriving at a small farm, the Hottentot leader made a halt, and exclaimed that it was impossible to proceed, for it rained "*all too hard.*" We consequently determined to remain at this place during the night. The wind and rain continued with great violence; and the goats belonging to the farm, having taken shelter under the waggon, entirely prevented my sleeping by their incessant bleating.

As daylight brought with it no favourable change of weather, I resolved on staying where we were till the storm should abate. A farmer residing here, expecting that I would not leave this spot during the day, borrowed a saddle of me to ride on a visit to some distant neighbour; but as the weather cleared up in the course of the afternoon, I was induced to proceed without waiting for the saddle. When we reached the farm of C. de Clerk, I asked permission to put my oxen into his cattle-kraal. In the absence, however, of the master, the person in charge of the place refused my request and insisted, in an impertinent manner, on my returning to *uitspan*. Being anxious to get forward, I did not feel dis-

posed to comply with his command, but proceeded a short distance up the valley, when I halted for the night. About midnight I was suddenly awoke with a strange uproar produced by the farmer, who had borrowed my saddle in the morning. He was exceedingly enraged at having had to follow me a distance of twenty miles. I was somewhat surprised to find him labouring under the foolish impression that I intended to accuse him before the magistrate at Beaufort of having stolen the saddle.

As the weather had become fine, I was enabled to leave this place early in the morning, reached the Zout river about mid-day, and proceeded in the direction of Beaufort, through Corland's Kloof. During our progress through this pass, which occupied upwards of an hour, we passed through an immense swarm of locusts, which flew about on all sides, and frequently dashed with great violence against our faces. Their numbers were so great as to occasion us no small degree of annoyance. The rains which had lately fallen had, from this place to Rhinoster Kop, where we halted, given to the whole country the appearance of a large marshy lake, a very unusual circumstance, since for some years past this district had been subject to long and continued drought.

I reached Beaufort the following morning, where, after remaining a few days, I set out on my return towards the Cape, experiencing much colder weather

than had been known for a long time previously, the thermometer at noon being as low as  $48^{\circ}$ . On passing the farm of Jacob Botha at the Kowp, on the 6th of November, the great chain of the Swartberg Mountains was completely covered with snow. Botha informed me that the frost had destroyed all his vegetables, and that he had never before witnessed such a season during the long period of his residence on the spot. The zebras, which usually inhabited the summit of the mountain, had been frequently seen grazing at the base.

Traversing the Karroo, which, from the heavy fall of rain, was now covered with the most luxuriant verdure, I passed through Worcester,\* New Kloof,

\* This district contains three villages: one near the Hex River, called the town of Worcester, one near the Roodesands Kloof, called Tulbagh; and one near the junction of the Olifant's River, and Jan Dessel's River, named Clanwilliam. The town contains a splendid but unfinished mansion, built for the residence of the Landrost, at present occupied by the civil commissioner of the district, and twenty-eight houses, scattered over the township. It is rather pleasantly placed on an extensive plain, surrounded by several ranges of high mountains, the summits of which consist of huge masses of naked rocks, and during the cold season are frequently covered with snow. This town, situated in a straight line between the Hex River and Du Toits Kloof, is well supplied with a copious stream of water from the Hex River, by which the gardens and fields of the town are irrigated. The soil in and about the town is of a fertile clay, adapted for all agricultural purposes; and as irrigation is resorted to, it will generally bear two crops a year. The oak, the poplar, the pine, the willow, and particularly the weeping willow, here grow luxuriantly. The fruit trees of most climates answer well, the vines grow abundantly, and produce grapes of very good flavour.



and Grooneberg, and arrived on the 12th of November, safe and well, at Cape Town.

---

### In traversing the wild and solitary regions

The Hex River has its source in the Roggevelds, and falls into the Hex River Kloof, after having watered the plain situated between two ridges of high mountains. On leaving these mountains, it divides itself into several branches, which running about four miles distant from the town of Worcester, and having meandered through the plain below the town, unite into one stream with the Broad River—the place where the junction of these two rivers is made being called the Moorakail, and situated about six miles from this town. The country round the town is interesting. On the East lies the division of the Hex River, containing some of the best farms in the Colony, equally adapted for grazing and agricultural purposes. This division has a great resemblance to some parts of Scotland. On the west is the Goudine, about eight miles distance from the town, a fertile and well-watered country, in which the Goudine, or Jordaens Bath, is situated a short distance from Du Toits Kloof. This bath, of which the heat is not greater than that of lukewarm water, having pretty good accommodations, is much frequented during the summer season. About eight miles towards the south-west, there is another bath called the Brandvalleis, having a most copious hot spring, issuing from a calcareous bottom, the heat of which is one hundred and forty-two degrees. Any animal or reptile falling into this spring is immediately destroyed:—vegetation is most luxuriant on its borders. Both these baths are generally resorted to in rheumatic and paralytic complaints, and obstinate, cutaneous disorders. It is, however, much to be lamented that no better accommodations are provided for the reception of invalids at this last bath. On the north side of this town is the division of Tulbagh, containing several good farms; and on the south side, the Boschjesveld, bordering on the district of Swellendam. The Broad River has its source in the Bokkeveld, about thirty miles distance from the town, descending through the Mosterts Hoek, and, after taking a meandering course along the range of mountains, it separates the town of Wor-

in which I had lately been a wayfarer, I could not but feel deeply impressed with the scanty means of improvement afforded to the Boors who are dispersed along the northern boundaries of the Colony, and are living isolated and alone, as if possessing no connexion with the Colony of which they form a part. This is more to be lamented, as a kind and liberal disposition is the distinguishing characteristic of these simple and open-hearted people, ever ready to welcome with hospitality and

cester from the Goudine division. During the rainy season, it frequently overflows its borders to a great distance, displaying a very extensive sheet of water. At those times it is dangerous to cross the drifts or fords. Small boats are then used for the purpose of crossing ;—one belonging to D. du Plessis, situated near the Visser's Drift, and one belonging to the widow D. Marais, situated about three miles from the New Drift. The south-east wind seldom blows with any violence near the town of Worcester,—is generally a pleasant breeze: the north-west is, however, at times severely felt; and in those instances it will frequently occur that the surrounding parts of the country receive an abundance of rain, whilst not a single shower falls on the town. This circumstance of partial exemption is to be ascribed to the situation of the high mountains encompassing the plain on which the town is situated.

The village of Tulbagh, where the residence of the chief magistrate was fixed in 1803, about three miles from the village itself, and where the judicial duties are at present performed by a justice of the peace, contains about twenty-seven houses, built in a regular street. It has a neat church—a blessing not yet bestowed on the town of Worcester, and a good mansion, with an extensive garden, for the minister of the parish. This village has not increased since the removal of the magistracy, but is rather on the decline. It is about thirty-six miles from the town of Worcester.—*South African Directory*, 1830.

protection the traveller who may visit their distant and lonely dwellings. Vague reports of what is passing at the other extremity of the Colony sometimes reach them through the Government Courant, which is sent weekly to the Veld Cornet of the district. Beyond this, they have little acquaintance with any passing events of the day, and the distance which separates one from the other tends to suppress that spirit of emulation that might otherwise have a beneficial influence upon their agricultural pursuits and domestic duties.

The few opportunities possessed by the farmers residing on the borders of obtaining education for their children must naturally oppose their advancement; and until the last few years this object has been sadly neglected and undervalued. It is true the "*Meister*" was generally found in the family of the Boor whose circumstances would allow of such an addition to the household; but in the appointment, his qualifications were seldom of much consideration; and hence, old discharged soldiers were usually seen filling these situations without any capabilities for such employment, and sometimes possessing habits that should have altogether disqualified them from such an office.

In the life of Oberlin it is stated that, when M. Stoubert went to take possession of the cure of Ban de la Roche, he began by first inquiring into the

manner of education there. Asking for the principal school, he was conducted to a miserable hovel, where there were a number of children crowded together without any occupation, and in so wild and noisy a state, that it was with some difficulty he could obtain a reply to his inquiry for the master. "There he is," said one of them, as soon as silence could be obtained, pointing to a withered old man, who lay on a little bed in one corner of the apartment: "Are you the school-master, my good friend?" inquired Stoubert; "Yes, Sir." "And what do you teach the children?" "Nothing, Sir, nothing." "How is that?" "Because," replied the old man, with characteristic simplicity, "I know nothing myself." "Why, then, were you appointed schoolmaster?" "Why, Sir, I had been taking care of the Waldbach pigs for a great number of years, and when I got too old and infirm for that employment, they sent me here to take care of the children."

Such, alas, is but too apt an illustration of the state of education amongst the Boors in the more remote districts of this Colony; and I cannot but think, that, while there has been a laudable zeal manifested on behalf of the native tribes beyond the borders, the solitary condition of the Boors scattered along the frontiers—shut out from all intercourse with society—has been sadly neglected, if not altogether overlooked. Within the last few years, however, the attention of the government has been

directed to this important object, and schools, with efficient masters, have been established in every district. The salutary effects are now beginning to be felt in the formation of useful societies, public libraries, reading-rooms, and, above all, by a higher tone of moral and intellectual feeling spreading throughout the colony. The Editor of the South African Advertiser, in a recent article advertizing to the benefits resulting from the formation of agricultural societies, makes the following remarks :—

“ Nature has done her part, the earth and sky invite our industry, and hold out a boundless reward. The contemplated improvement in the condition of the labourer will, it may confidently be hoped, in a short time put into the hands of the farmer an improved instrument for the production of wealth. Instead of the listless limb of the ignorant slave, he will have for assistance and reliance, the head and heart of a free and educated peasantry. The great Poet has said,

‘ There is a tide in the affairs of men,  
Which taken at the flood leads on to fortune ;’

and every man of observation must see that in this Colony the ‘ tide’ has turned in our favour ; it is rapidly rising and covering the ‘ shallows,’ and the miseries where we have lingered long, and bearing us almost unconsciously towards shores of fairest promise. This, then, is the moment for cheerful enterprise—for united exertion, for friendly emu-

lation, and all those individual and combined efforts in behalf of our rising community, which dignify a free and enlightened people.

“ To kindle, or to fan this flame, the agricultural societies are everywhere exerting their strength, and have a solid claim to the zealous co-operation of every one who professes to love his country—of every one, indeed, who understands his own interest. Though yet but in their infancy, the influence of these societies has been beneficially felt far and near. But they have still much to accomplish in the way of **EXCITEMENT**. The farmers live so far apart from each other, that the spirit of emulation, and even of imitation, languishes and falls to the earth between them. Instead of comparing himself with his more active neighbour, and girding up his loins to overtake and pass him in the race, the solitary Boor is too apt to talk of his grandfather, to plead old custom as a bar to experiment, and to hold himself excused from the labour of thought, by a dutiful adherence to the habits of his infancy. The diffusion of mere agricultural information will not break this spell. To tell men how to sow and plough and reap is only part of our business. The poorest practical farmer is perhaps better qualified than any lay member of these societies to give instruction on such matters. He will do most to improve the agriculture of the country, who shall open the eyes of the agriculturists generally to the magnitude, importance,

and certainty of the rewards which follow enterprise and perseverance. By 'Rewards,' we do not mean silver cups, or other honorary premiums given by the agricultural societies. These have their weight. But personal comforts, elevation in the scale of civilized life, the means of educating their children, and launching them into the world with better prospects of success than their predecessors enjoyed, independence, rank and station in society,—awaken an ardent desire for such rewards as these, and all that man can wish for in the way of industry will speedily follow. In all these respects the present condition of the Boors in many of the districts is truly deplorable.

“ Miserably deficient in clothing, in furniture, in culinary utensils, in apartments—half-a-dozen people often sleeping in the same room—without instruction, destitute of books, we have seen respectable fathers and mothers of families, who, in their youth, had known better things, sit down and weep over the unconcealable deterioration of their offspring. But such fits of regret were only momentary. Habit had reconciled them to this wretched mode of life; there was nothing either around or within them to stir up their ambition, or to carry them over the first pains or anxieties of unusual toil and new undertakings.

“ In attempting to improve the physical condition of any people in such circumstances, we must begin

with the Mind. The intellectual powers, and the moral instincts must be cultivated, regulated, and refined. A strong mind strengthens the body. It is the source of all energy and action. A pure mind purifies its dwelling. Nudity, raggedness, and filth, are utterly inconsistent with high-toned morality, or the sentiments inspired by so bold a hope as that of immortal life in regions of stainless light. Rouse this hope, communicate this mental strength, and the desired improvements in man's physical condition follow as naturally as the green blade, the stalk, the ear, the corn in the ear grow up, we know not how, under the invisible influence of the seasons.

“ We by no means affirm that these great truths have been overlooked ; but we submit that there is room for increased exertion on all sides on the part of those who labour to diffuse knowledge among the Colonists. It must be brought to their doors—it must be presented in every attractive shape—it must be made cheap, and of easy access. Where has this been done ? In how few of our villages has a public library been established ! Even the ordinary elementary books for the pupils are, in many instances, wanting in our schools ! If the truths we refer to, therefore, have not been overlooked altogether, we cannot but admit that their importance has not been duly estimated.”



## CHAPTER IV.

Report reaches Cape Town of the loss of the Ship *Jessie*.—Proceed to the Wreck—Hottentots' Holland Kloof—Meet a Boor—Obtain further Particulars—Three Shipwrecked Mariners—Their account of the Wreck, and providential Escape—Reach the Beach—Melancholy Scene—Dyer's Island—Meet the Captain of the Vessel and one of the Passengers—Return through a wild and solitary Country—Moravian Establishment—Thoughts suggested by the Scene—Kindness manifested by the Moravian Brethren—Leprosy House—Hemel and Aarde Mountains—Gnadendaal.

ON Monday evening, the 12th of October, 1829, the inhabitants of Cape Town were thrown into a state of the greatest consternation and alarm, in consequence of the distressing intelligence of the loss of the ship "*Jessie*," Captain Winter, which vessel had only left Table Bay the Wednesday preceding, on her voyage to the Mauritius, intending to touch at Algoa Bay on her way. As she was a remarkably fine vessel, a number of Cape residents had been induced to embark on board of her. These persons being intimately known to the inhabitants of Cape Town, great anxiety was felt on their account. Perhaps no wreck in the vicinity of the Cape ever created so great a degree of excitement, which the various conflicting reports in constant circulation tended to increase. The first authentic intelligence which reached the town was that the "*Jessie*," Cap-

tain Winter, had been wrecked off Cape L'Aguillas, on the night of the 7th of October; that three sailors had succeeded in gaining the shore in an open boat, who reported that all on board except themselves had perished.

On the morning after this intelligence was received, in company with several other persons, I proceeded on horseback towards the spot where the vessel was wrecked. On reaching Hottentots' Holland Kloof, we overtook a horse waggon with a party of gentlemen, among whom were the parents of two of the unfortunate passengers, proceeding to the same place in order to obtain information relative to the fate of their sons, two young gentlemen who had embarked on board the *Jessie* on a mercantile speculation. Leaving them to change horses, we proceeded through the kloof, but had not gone above a mile up this tremendous pass, when we met a farmer coming into town with his waggon from the Breede River. This person informed us that he was the bearer of a letter from one of the passengers, who, with several others, had succeeded in reaching that place in an open boat. Perceiving the letter was addressed to one of the individuals before alluded to, we immediately returned to communicate this intelligence. We were, however, alike the messengers of joy and woe: for while to one parent it conveyed the gratifying information of his son's preservation, to the other it announced the

distressing intelligence that his son had found a watery grave.

The day being now far advanced, and our horses fatigued, we determined to put up for the night at the house of a friend, leaving the party we had overtaken to pursue their dreary route through the recesses of this wild and gloomy pass.

We rose early the next morning, and followed in their track, but, by the time we reached Caledon, my horse was knocked up; a farmer residing at this place, with great kindness, lent me one of his, nor could I on my return prevail on him to accept of any remuneration. As the sun was casting its declining beams upon the summits of the surrounding mountains, we began to descend a steep and narrow foot-path, down which we were obliged to drag our horses, and it was not until evening had closed in, that we succeeded in reaching the farm of Mr. Villiers, after a long and tedious ride. Here we were kindly welcomed, and put up for the night.

A few hours' ride on the following morning over a wild and open country, brought us to the residence of a farmer named Black, who informed us that the wreck lay but a short distance from his house, and offered to accompany us to the spot after we had partaken of some refreshment.

On our way to the beach, we met three sailors who had succeeded in reaching the shore from the wreck. The names of these men were John Crayton,

William Winnicott, and Thomas Sadler. They had been seeking the bodies of their shipmates, and from them we learnt the following melancholy particulars. They stated, that on the night the vessel was lost, going before the wind at the rate of eight or nine knots an hour, she suddenly ran upon a reef of rocks, and within half an hour was a total wreck. They, together with a Mr. S., a passenger, and an apprentice boy, succeeded in getting into the boat belonging to the vessel. Having no oars, the boat was carried off by the violence of the wind, and they were consequently unable to render any assistance to their unhappy shipmates, whose cries for help were heard loudly and imploringly amidst this scene of awful devastation. Being at the mercy of the wind and current, they drifted for some hours, the sea frequently breaking over them, and threatening every moment to swamp the boat. It was with the greatest difficulty they were enabled to keep her from going down by baling the water with their hats, boots, or anything they could get hold of. By these means they succeeded in keeping her afloat. Their only hope now was that they would be enabled to keep off the land until daylight. In this critical situation, they were anxiously praying for the dawn of day, and constantly inquiring the time of Mr. S., who happened to have a watch. About half-past two they thought they could discern the land, and were cheering

themselves with the prospect that daylight would soon appear, but a heavy swell unexpectedly drove them in among the breakers. A tremendous sea breaking over them, upset the boat, washed the boy overboard, and obliged the four men to cling fast in order to avert a similar catastrophe. Mr S. complained that his strength was fast failing; the seamen, however, encouraged him to hold on, assuring him that the surf would soon carry them on shore, but exhausted by fatigue, and benumbed with cold, he exclaimed, "I can hold on no longer." At that moment a heavy sea broke over the boat, and drove it high upon the rocks, but this highly-respected and amiable young man, Mr. S., was seen no more.

The three mariners succeeded with difficulty in climbing over the sharp and slippery rocks, and reached the shore, where they cast their bruised and weary bodies under some bushes, overwhelmed with feelings of the deepest gratitude at their escape from such imminent peril. Here they remained until the morning, when they rose and proceeded in search of some human habitation. They soon reached the cottage of farmer Black, where they were most kindly received, and provided with such necessaries as their host could procure.

About a quarter of an hour's ride brought us to the beach, when the scene which presented itself was of the most distressing character. The boat in which the three sailors had escaped from the wreck

lay high upon the rocks where the sea had left it. Dead sheep, pigs, fowls, and a vast number of horses, originally destined for the Mauritius market, merchandize of almost every description, together with part of the wreck of the vessel, lay scattered along the beach. Here I picked up, and retained as a memento, the Dove which had formerly ornamented the figure-head of the ill-fated "Jessie." A number of farmers from the neighbourhood had assembled to protect the property washed ashore; by one of these I was informed that they had assisted in burying the bodies recovered from the wreck of the "Arnistou." A short distance from this spot, a monument had been erected to commemorate that melancholy event, which was still standing. On the following morning we proceeded to Dyer's Island, near which the vessel was wrecked. Several wine-pipes were observed standing on end, which suggested the idea that some of the unfortunate individuals missing might have succeeded in reaching the island, and had been endeavouring to make signals to the shore. Notwithstanding the surf was breaking with considerable violence, after several unsuccessful attempts, a boat put off for the island, but it was found impossible to effect a landing. The persons who thus bravely hazarded their lives were near enough to discover part of the wreck and cargo, but could not perceive any of the bodies of the passengers or crew.

Having gone down the coast for some considerable

distance, we returned without having seen anything except the carcass of a dead whale which had been driven upon the rocks by the surf, and on which a multitude of gulls and other aquatic birds were feasting. Near this spot I observed a number of the Ibis Religiosa, a bird supposed to be confined to the neighbourhood of the Nile, and remarkable for having been an object of worship amongst the Egyptians. On our return, I met a young gentleman who had come from Cape Town in search of his father, an old and respectable Cape merchant, who had only a few days before embarked as passenger on board the Jessie. After a fruitless inquiry, and feeling assured from what he had seen and heard, that there could be no ground for hope of his father's safety, he determined to quit the scene of this melancholy disaster, and accompany me back to Cape Town.

We had not long quitted this spot when, upon crossing an open country, we observed a party of horsemen at some distance. Upon coming up with them, to our surprise, we found that among the party was the Captain of the vessel, and a Mr. Dixon, a passenger, who with several of the seamen had succeeded in reaching Port Beaufort in the long-boat, after having been cast about at sea for two nights and a day, suffering the greatest privations, as the following extract of a letter written on the spot will abundantly testify. It is dated the 12th of October, 1829.

“ I can assure you our situation was a most awful one. After she struck upon the rocks (which were as we supposed ten miles from the land) she was not more than ten minutes going into a thousand pieces. After being washed off the wreck, and thrown on again by the sea, thirteen of us succeeded in getting into the long-boat, where with one oar and two pieces of wood, and entirely without provisions or water, we were buffeted about for two nights and a day. At last we landed on this coast almost exhausted, and after walking about for several hours, we found our way to Port Beaufort, which consists only of two houses, where we have been treated with the greatest kindness. We have been compelled to remain here, not being able to get any conveyance: we have, however, made arrangements to leave on the 15th, and shall be in town about the 21st. I am afraid twelve have met a watery grave; in fact, it is impossible they could have reached the shore, as we saw most of them floating about nearly dead. I am well aware it will be distressing to you to hear such an awful account; I will therefore wait until I see you, when I will acquaint you with all particulars.”

The following lines were written on the occasion by a gentleman residing at the Cape.

“ How late, as to the fav'ring breeze  
Her dazzling canvass proudly bent,  
The gallant Jessie swam the seas,  
All eyes admiring as she went !



Of fair friends who on shore remain,  
White hands are waved and kerchiefs float ;  
And eyes at length are strain'd in vain  
To mark the forms on which they doat.

Hope's visions dance before their sight ;  
No damp of fear the voy'gers feel ;  
Quick o'er the waters blue and bright  
Their bosoms bound, as bounds the keel.

Then little thought they yon bright sun,  
That glitter'd on their heaving stem,  
When that day's glad career was run,  
Would rise no more for some of them !

Night came: a tempest swept the deep ;  
The fitful moon all feebly shone ;  
An anxious watch the seamen keep ;  
The fresh'ning gale impels them on.

One moment—and before the blast  
The gallant bark sublimely rode ;  
Another—and above her mast  
The welt'ring billows fiercely flow'd !

And where are they—the thirty souls  
Whom late that vanish'd vessel bore ?  
The sullen wave above them rolls,—  
Yet some have reach'd the distant shore.

And there they sit forlorn, and bend  
O'er the wild wave their eager view,  
If more the ruthless sea might send  
To join them, of that fated crew.

In vain :—no more they reach the land ;  
The inmost chambers of the main  
The fairest of that once gay band  
Within their gloomy bounds detain.

No more their hearts' warm pulses bound—  
 The young, the beautiful, the gay;  
 Now not a rock in ocean's round  
 More senseless and more cold than they!

Unheard of them, their dirge forlorn  
 Is sung by night-winds moaning loud—  
 Themselves the sport of tempests borne,  
 Wrapp'd in a wave, their restless shroud!"

Leaving the captain and his companions, who were proceeding to the wreck, we continued our course over a wild and uncultivated country, filled with painful reflections on what we had seen and heard.

During our solitary ride we came to a Missionary Station, belonging to the Moravian Brothers, situated in a retired and secluded spot in the midst of a lone wilderness, called "Elim." Here we halted to refresh ourselves and our horses. An air of order and peacefulness pervaded this quiet valley, while the kindness manifested by the amiable messengers of peace produced an impression on my mind that will never be effaced. One could imagine a stranger entering such a scene, exclaiming in the words of the great poet,—

" I thought that all things had been savage here  
 And therefore put I on the countenance  
 Of stern commandment: but whate'er ye are,  
 That in this desert inaccessible,  
 Under the shade of melancholy boughs,  
 Lose and neglect the creeping hours of time—  
 If ever you have look'd on better days;  
 If ever been where bells have knoll'd to church;  
 If ever sat at any good man's feast;

If ever from your eyelids wiped a tear ;  
 And know what 'tis to pity and be pitied ;  
 Let gentleness my strong enforcement be ;  
 In the which hope, I blush, and hide my sword."  
 " True is it that we have seen better days ;  
 And have with holy bell been knoll'd to church  
 And sat at good men's feasts ; and wiped our eyes  
 Of drops that sacred pity hath engender'd ;  
 And therefore sit you down in gentleness,  
 And take upon command what help we have,  
 That to your wanting may be minister'd."

Leaving these happy people, we directed our course along the "Hemel and Aarde Mountains," (Heaven and Earth,) so called from an institution of that name being established in its vicinity for the reception of coloured people, afflicted with that dreadful and incurable disease, the leprosy. This establishment is under the superintendence of the Moravian Brethren, whose praiseworthy exertions in ameliorating the condition of its unhappy inmates is above all commendation.

Within a short ride of this Station is another establishment, called Gnadendaal, or the Vale of Grace, one of the most extensive institutions in this country belonging to the Moravians, consisting of between thirteen and fourteen hundred inhabitants. This Station was originally called Baviaan's Kloof; and it was here that the first Missionary to South Africa, a German, named Smidt, from Bohemia, took up his abode. In this secluded valley, amidst the exuberant wildness of nature, he commenced his labours

among the despised and degraded natives. It is now one of the most flourishing stations within the Colony, and the order and regularity which characterizes its arrangements cannot fail to excite the admiration of all who visit this delightful valley.

Their festivals and religious services are marked by a degree of simplicity that seems to connect them with the primitive ages of Christianity; while the exquisite melody of their German airs, as sung to the hymns which their ancestors composed under persecution, amidst the mountains of Bohemia, are calculated to produce feelings of deep and powerful interest.

In order that my readers may form some idea of the simple and impressive character of their service, and how calculated it is to arrest the attention and awaken in the mind of the unlettered Hottentot new and devout feeling, I will here insert, from the pen of an able writer, a description of their Easter festival, as witnessed at this Station of Gnadendaal, or Vale of Grace.

“ On the morning of Easter-day, the Hottentot congregation, with many strangers, both native and European, had assembled in the burial ground, by the early hour at which Mary, on the first day of the week, went to the sepulchre. About a thousand persons, old and young, were present at the reading of the litany of their ancient church specially appointed for that purpose, in the open air. All was

hushed to silence under the cool grey morning sky, from which the stars were retiring one by one, and the moon grew paler in the west, the dew lay thick upon the ground, where the graves were ranged in goodly rows, one small flat stone on the head of each, bearing the name and date of the poor inhabitant below, while the space yet unoccupied presented to the eyes of many there standing the very spot where each should lie down among the clods of the valley—the very spot from which each should come forth at the shout of the archangel and the trump of God. Here amidst the congregation of the living, and in the presence of that of the dead, the single voice of the minister was heard, relieved only from pause to pause by the responses of the people, at first low and indistinct, but gradually rising in tone and fervour as the dawn brightened above them. On either side were seen the everlasting hills; here the *Donder Berg*, the mountain of thunder, so called because the heaviest storms collect on its head, rush down and spread their fury at its feet; there the *Groote* mountain, shutting out half the heavens with its shadow; ere long the peaks of both grew golden in the spreading light; the mists exhaled in shining wreaths along their eastern flanks, while the retiring darkness, more intense by contrast, deepened through the inner glen. In the midst of the service, while the words of the Redeemer were yet sounding in the ears of the people as though they heard them from his own lips

just breaking through the silence of the tomb, 'I am the resurrection and the life, he that believeth in me though he were dead yet shall he live,' the sun sprang above the horizon, opening the whole temple of the universe, and pouring at once his radiance upon the breadth of the mountains, into the bosom of the valley, upon the countenances of the living, along the graves of the dead. At the sight of that daily emblem of the Sun of Righteousness arising on the nations with healing in his beams, the glad multitude lifted up their voices praising God, and singing the triumph of Him, who on the morn of his own resurrection ascended up on high, led captivity captive, and received gifts for men, yea, for the rebellious also, that the Lord God might dwell among them. This hath Christianity done for an African valley, and this will it do for the rest of the dark places of the earth which are yet full of the habitations of cruelty and wickedness."

" In distant Europe oft I've long'd to see  
 This quiet 'Vale of Grace,' to list the sound  
 Of moaning brooks and mellow turtles, round  
 The patriarch Schmidt's old consecrated tree;  
 To hear the hymns of solemn melody  
 Rising from the sequester'd burial ground;  
 To see the heathen taught—the lost sheep found,  
 The blind restored—the long-oppress'd set free.  
 All this I've witness'd now—and pleasantly  
 Its memory shall in my heart remain."

During a residence of a few weeks at Groenekloof, one of these interesting establishments, intelligence

reached the Station that several additional Missionaries had arrived in Cape Town from Germany, to join their brethren in their exertions to evangelize the natives of this country. On the morning of their expected arrival, the Hottentots belonging to the place were anxiously on the look out from the mountain top at the back of the settlement, which commands an extensive view over a flat and open country, bounded by the sea on the one hand, and the great chain of mountains which forms the first ridge or terrace of Southern Africa on the other. On this eminence I was engaged collecting plants and insects, when my attention was attracted by the scene of activity that was passing below. The Missionaries' waggon drawn by a team of ten or twelve oxen was observed in the distance, slowly approaching through the heavy, burning sands, when a large party of Hottentots, accompanied by their pastors, proceeded to welcome the newly-arrived strangers to the scene of their labours, and to conduct them to the threshold of their future destination. On reaching the waggon the female members of the church, attired in white, arranged themselves on one side and the men on the other, when the Missionaries alighted from the waggon and were received by the brethren with open arms, whilst the Hottentots immediately commenced singing a hymn of praise, forcibly reminding me of that sublime description of the Prophet,

“ How beautiful upon the mountains are the feet of him that bringeth good tidings, that publisheth peace, that bringeth good tidings of good, that publisheth salvation, that saith unto Zion, Thy God reigneth.”

But to return from this long digression: we continued our ride together, and towards evening reached the residence of Mr. Tesselaar, one of the Veld Cornets of the Caledon district, a most kind and hospitable man, where we remained until the following morning, when we departed for Cape Town, which we reached on the evening of the same day.

---



## PART THE FOURTH.

## CHAPTER I.

General Descriptions of African Zoology—New Species of Animals, together with various Specimens of Natural History, collected in Southern Africa.

To form a just estimate of the peculiar characters which distinguish the natural productions of any particular country, it is necessary to take into account the leading features of its physical geography, to attend to the magnitude and direction of its principal rivers and mountain chains, and to study the effects which these circumstances necessarily produce upon the general temperature and climatology due to the latitude of the place. In the case of Africa this is perhaps more necessary than in that of any other continent; for though placed for the most part within the tropics, and therefore inheriting, as it were, from nature an almost perfect uniformity of climate throughout its whole extent, the alternations of mountain and plain, of open karroo and forest, of rich arable and barren desert, are so common and so extensive, that the productions of all other quarters of the world may be said to find a congenial climate in some part of Africa. The whole north-eastern portion of the continent, as is well known,

is occupied by the chain of the Atlas mountains and their various ramifications, which rise in some instances above the snow line, and give origin to various rivers and streams which pour themselves into the Mediterranean or Atlantic, and fertilize the rich plains of Barbary and Morocco. On the eastern part of the continent again, the lofty chains of Samen and Taranta, and the Kong or Mountains of the Moon, penetrate far into the interior, and form a succession of elevated terraces and table lands throughout Abyssinia and the surrounding countries; whilst the extreme south is occupied by the Nieuwveld, Sneeuwberg, and other mountains extending beyond Tembia and Delagoa of less importance, but which nevertheless do not fail to produce very essential modifications upon the climate and temperature of the country. All these parts of Africa, as they enjoy the climate, so likewise do they possess the productions of the temperate zone, mixed, it is true, with the more usual inhabitants of the tropics, but still preserving a decidedly temperate character. Thus we find the bear, the stag, the moufflon and the wild boar, as common in Northern Africa, as in any part of Europe; and although the lion and the panther are likewise inhabitants of the same localities, yet it must not be forgotten that these formidable animals, at least the lion, were as common in Macedon and Bœotia in the time of the ancient Greeks, as they are in any part of Africa at the present day.

The next grand feature in the physical geography of Africa, which it is necessary to notice as affecting the character of its natural productions, is the great extent of desert which occupies various large portions of this continent, and which is for the most part without elevations and destitute of water. The deserts of Africa, however, differ very considerably in their particular characters, though they agree in the great outline of their features. The Sahara, or Great Desert for instance, which occupies the entire face of the country between the Atlas mountains on the north, and the rich and fertile valleys of the Senegal, Gambia, and Niger, on the south, consists entirely of low rocky hills, and boundless extents of moving sands, parched and pulverized by the intense heat of a tropical sun, with here and there an oasis, or wadey, as they are called by the Arabs, where a patch of verdure and a few date trees surround an occasional spring. In such a country, it may be easily supposed, living inhabitants are not to be found; and indeed, unless it be a few jerboas or other similar animals in the neighbourhood of the wadeys, or an occasional flock of gazelles or ostriches on the outskirts of the desert, the Sahara may be said to be altogether destitute of inhabitants. But the case is widely different with respect to the deserts of South Africa. The characters of these deserts are altogether different from that of the Sahara; though like it consisting of a sandy soil, yet the staple is firmly

united by the fibres and roots of various plants, which draw a certain portion of nourishment at all times even from the parched soil of the karroos, and which in the rainy season cover the whole country with rich and spontaneous verdure. The karroos of Southern and Central Africa are thus similar in their principal characters to the steppes of Northern Asia, excepting that their intertropical position, and the consequent changes of dry and rainy seasons, give the Central African deserts a variety which the Asiatic do not possess. It also adapts them much better to the support of animal life, particularly for the support of such graminivorous animals as possess speed of foot to enable them to traverse great distances in a short space of time, in search of the often widely-dispersed situations in which their congenial food is to be found. Accordingly, no country abounds with such innumerable flocks of antelopes, gazelles, &c., or with such numberless varieties and species of these animals as the karroos of Southern and Central Africa. Out of nearly seventy species which naturalists have enumerated as belonging to the antelope genus, no fewer than fifty are proper to Africa, and of these upwards of twenty-five have been found within the Colony of the Cape of Good Hope, or in the countries immediately bordering upon it towards the east and north. This is certainly one of the most singular circumstances in African Zoology, or indeed in the geographical distri-

bution of animals over the surface of the earth ; and it is rendered still more interesting by the fact, that of the Deer tribe, the genus of Ruminating animals, which, next to the antelopes, is most abundant in species, two only out of nearly thirty species are known to exist in any part of this continent, and even these confined to the valleys of the Atlas Mountains.

“ Generally speaking, the antelopes are gregarious and unite in large herds, either permanently, or at particular seasons of the year, but only for the sake of migrating in search of more abundant and grateful pasturage ; some species, however, reside in pairs or small families, consisting of an old male and one or more females, with the young of the two foregoing seasons. They are always extremely cautious in guarding against surprise, placing sentinels in various directions about their feeding ground, to warn them of the approach of danger, while grazing or reposing ; and their vision and sense of smell are so acute, that it is only by using the greatest caution and circumspection that the hunter can bring them within range of the gun. The names by which the animals themselves are distinguished in all languages, ancient as well as modern, have a direct reference to this quickness of sight, and to the brilliancy of the large black eyes, which form so conspicuous a feature in the antelopes. Thus the word *dorcas* (*δορκάς*), the Greek and Roman name of the gazelle, or common Barbary antelope, is derived

from the verb *δερκομαι*, to see. The common English word antelope, which zoologists have adopted as the generic name of the group, is a corrupt form of the term *ἀνθολοψ*, employed by Eustathius to designate an animal of this genus, and literally signifying *bright eyes*; and according to the learned Bochart, *Tabitha*, the name of the disciple raised to life at Joppa, is derived from *tzebi*, the Hebrew name of the common gazelle, and alludes likewise to the beauty of its eyes. Among the Greeks and Romans also, as we learn from Agathias, and others, *dorcas*, *dorcalis*, and *damalis*, all names of different antelopes, were common names of women likewise, bestowed, without doubt, on account of the remarkable beauty of their eyes; and Prosper Alpinus and more recent travellers inform us, that ‘Aine el czazel—you have the eyes of an antelope,’ is the greatest compliment which at the present day an Oriental admirer can pay to his mistress. Eastern poetry and romance, as well as the works of the Greeks and Romans, abound with similes and metaphors taken from the form and habits of these animals: they are universally the images of gentleness and timidity, of grace and fleetness. The inspired writer beautifully compares the speed of Asahel to that of the wild gazelle; the Gadites also are said to have been as swift as mountain gazelles—for this is the proper signification of the Hebrew word *tzebi*, improperly translated *roe* in our English version of the Scriptures; and many

other instances might be adduced, both from sacred and profane writers. Throughout all parts of the East, the fleetness and timidity of the antelope tribe is still proverbial, and furnishes the Persian and Arab poets with images of gentleness, beauty, grace, and affection. The swiftest dogs and horses are left far behind in the pursuit of these animals, and it is only by stratagem that they can be hunted with success."

For this purpose the hawk or the cheetah (*felis jubata*) is commonly employed in the East, and the *roer*, or various descriptions of snares and traps by the inhabitants of South Africa. The hawk, by attacking the animal about the head and eyes, harasses it and impedes its flight, till the hunter has time to come up; and the cheetah, like the rest of the cat kind, steals upon it unawares, and seizes it by a sudden spring before it has time for flight. If, however, the first spring misses in its aim, and the antelope escapes, there is no chance of taking it afterwards, and the cheetah, irritated by disappointment, is soothed only with considerable difficulty, and becomes unfit for the chase for some days afterwards. The Bushmen often destroy vast numbers of the antelopes with which their country abounds, by poisoning the springs and reservoirs to which they are known to resort, nor is the flesh ever known to be injured by this mode of slaughter: they also shoot them with poisoned arrows, but in this case

the parts immediately around the wound must be cut out before the rest of the body imbibes the poison, which would otherwise penetrate through it, and render it unfit for food.

The precise nature of the habitat frequented by these animals has nothing of a uniform character, but, as might naturally be expected from the different modifications of organic structure observable throughout the genus, differs according to the particular species. Some frequent the dry sandy deserts, and feed upon the stunted acacias and bulbous plants which spring up even in the most arid situations, where the stony nature of the ground gives a certain degree of adherence to the soil; some prefer the open stony plains, the steppes of Central Asia, and karroos of Southern Africa, where the grass, though parched, is still sufficient for their subsistence; some again inhabit the steep rocky mountains, and leap from cliff to cliff with the ease and security of a wild goat, whilst others are found only in the thick and almost impenetrable forests of tropical countries.

Three different and beautifully-marked species of the horse genus, the zebra, the dauw, and the quagga, likewise inhabit the plains and karroos of Southern and Central Africa, and the graceful *zerapha* or camelopard is occasionally found in small herds traversing the sandy plains, and picking up a scanty subsistence from the prickly acacias which abound in



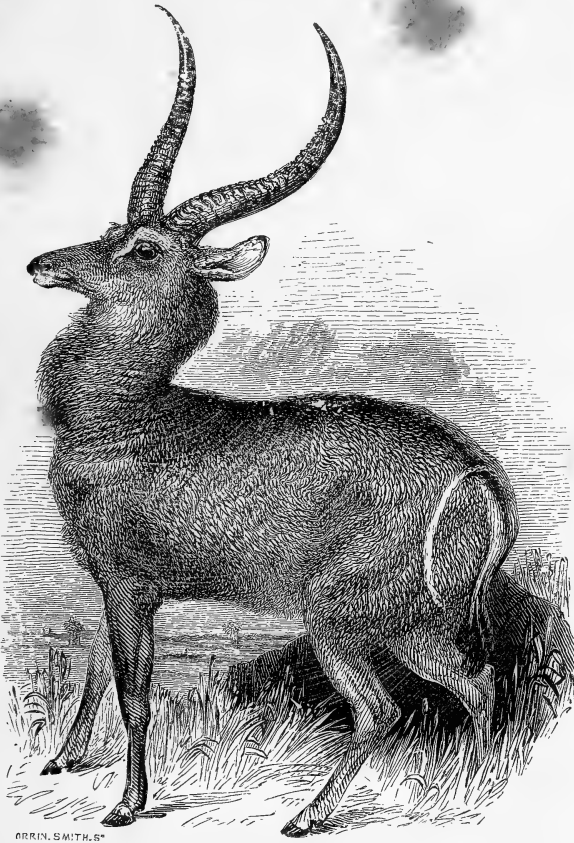
many parts of the desert. In unusually dry seasons, when the ordinary supply of vegetation fails on the karroos of the interior, innumerable flocks of these animals migrate southward in search of more abundant pastures, and thus new species are often encountered within the Colonial boundary which had never been seen south of the Orange River before, and which perhaps do not make their appearance in the same localities for many years afterwards.

The migration of the spring-boks, or treck-bokken, which is of more frequent occurrence than in any other species of antelope, as I have had occasion already to notice, is much dreaded by the farmers of the Sneeuwberg district, as from the countless multitudes of animals which unite upon these occasions to emigrate in search of more abundant pastures, every green thing soon disappears from the surface of the earth, and the fields are left as bare and parched as if a cloud of locusts had rested on them. Hares, jerboas, and other different species of small rodent animals, are likewise found in great abundance upon these karroos; and of course where such variety of graminivorous and herbivorous animals are found, it is but natural to suppose that there will be no lack of carnivorous and ferocious beasts to prey upon them. We find accordingly that many different species of such animals abound in Southern Africa. The lion, the leopard, and the cheetah, make their prey of the different kinds of antelopes, and sometimes

of the chackma, or large baboon of the country, which, with a small monkey, *Cercopithecus Erythropyga*, is the only quadrumanous animal found within the British Colony: the lynx and various smaller species of cats are destructive principally among birds and small arborial quadrupeds, which their power of climbing trees, and creeping through bushes, places within their reach. Three different species of hyænas, called wolves at the Cape, with innumerable smaller carnivorous quadrupeds, prowl about in search of dead carcasses, or whatever else they can manage to surprise and overcome.

After having thus given a very brief outline of the general character of African zoology, I shall proceed to the description of a few of the more remarkable species, either such as have not been already described, or which, from their extreme scarceness even in their native country, are but seldom met with.

ANTILOPE ELLIPSIPRYMNUS.—This magnificent animal was exhibited at a meeting of the Zoological Society, where it was described by Mr. Ogilby, and attracted the universal attention of the members, by the singularity of its characters and the elegance of its proportions. Its entire length from the muzzle to the root of the tail is seven feet four inches; its height from the hoof to the tip of horn, seven feet three inches; to the shoulder, three feet ten inches; the length of its horn on the curve,



THE ANTELOPE ELLIPSIPRYMNUM.



two feet six inches ; and their distance at the points, one foot ten inches and a half. In its general form and proportions, it more nearly resembles the *A. Leucophæa*, and *A. Equina*, of modern naturalists, than any other species of ruminant ; but it is readily distinguished from those animals, by the curvature of the horns bending regularly forwards instead of backwards ; by the hair along the spine and back of the neck being reversed, or running in a contrary direction to that of the other part of the body ; but above all, by the singular and regular ellipse of milk-white hair which passes over the croup, down the posterior face of the hips, and between the thighs, having the tail in its superior focus, vividly contrasting with the dark vinous-brown colour of the surrounding parts. This singular mark, which has never been observed in any other animal, has suggested the specific name of *Ellipsiprymnus*, which, from possessing a character altogether peculiar to this new and undescribed animal, readily distinguishes it from all other species by which it might by possibility be confounded. I was informed by a gentleman residing in the Colony, that a horn of this animal had once been brought into Cape Town during the time of the Dutch government, who, ever eager to enrich their museums at home, offered a large reward for a specimen of the animal to which it belonged, but from that time nothing further had been heard of the animal, until I brought the present specimen from the

interior, which is the only perfect one ever seen in the Colony\*.

This animal has been characterized as the ANTILOPE ELLIPSIPRYMNUS. *Ant. cornubus maximis, elongatis, procurvis, annulatis; rhinario magno: scopis nullis; poris inguinalibus: caudâ longâ, floccosâ: pilis rigidis, floccosis, lineæ dorsalis cervicisque mediæ reversis: rufo-brunneo griseoque varius, metopio saturatè brunneo, maculâ longâ supra oculari, labiis, fascia indistinctâ gulari, maculâ jugulari, ellipsique prymnali, albis* †.

CYNICTIS STEEDMANII. *Ogilby*.—This singular little quadruped, hitherto unknown to zoologists, was recently described at the Zoological Society, under the name of *Cynictis Steedmanii*. It belongs to the family of *Viverra*; but in its zoological characters differ so essentially from all described species of that family, and presents characters so peculiar and appropriate, as to form the type of a new and distinct genus, of which, at present, it is the only known species. The teeth are similar to those of the civets, paradoxures, and other *viverra* in general, but the feet are completely digitigrade, the heel highly elevated, and the toes five on the fore, and only four on the

\* Previous to embarking for England, I saw an imperfect specimen in the possession of his Excellency Sir Lowry Cole, then Governor of the Cape, which his Excellency has since presented to Mr. Verreaux, a French Naturalist, but it was in too mutilated a state to admit of being mounted.

† Proceed. of Zool. Soc.

hind feet, characters in which it differs essentially from all these animals, and which approximates it more nearly to the dogs and foxes. The generic name *cynictis*, from the two Greek words, *κυν* a dog or fox, and *ικτις*, a weasel or ferret, is intended to express this combination of characters, signifying an animal intermediate between a dog or fox, and a ferret. It is found in the eastern parts of the Colony of the Cape of Good Hope, and in Caffraria; burrows in the earth, and lives upon small animals. This specimen was obtained from the district of Uitenhage, but I have met with it while crossing the Karroo, from the neighbourhood of which I obtained another specimen. It is a lively little creature, extremely active and graceful in its movements, and is called by the Colonists the Rooie Muis-hunt.

The following is Mr. W. Ogilby's interesting description of this new genus of carnivora, as published in the Transactions of the Zoological Society.

“That the work of creation was originally complete and perfect in all its parts; that no hiatus existed among natural bodies, or, in other words, that no individual stood completely apart from surrounding groups, but that all were connected by a uniform gradation of intermediate forms and characters, is a law of natural history which every day's experience tends more strongly to confirm. It is true that, even at the present time, many instances might be brought forward in the animal kingdom, of insulated groups,

apparently united by no connecting links ; and many others, more particularly among the larger hoofed quadrupeds, in which we have no reason to suppose that any such connecting links exist in the actual state of things : but in the one case we have daily opportunities of verifying the general law by the discovery and introduction of new animals from remote and unexplored regions ; and in the other, the combined researches of modern zoology and geology have brought to light numerous genera and species, long since swept from the surface of the earth by various convulsions of nature and the consequent changes produced in the physical character of the globe which fill up the chasms that would otherwise appear among the forms and characters of existing animals.

“ The little animal which forms the subject of the present memoir affords a striking illustration of the truth of these reflections. It forms, in truth, the type of a genus which connects the family of the civets with that of the dogs, in all their most essential characters ; participating with the one in its organs of mastication, and with the other in those of locomotion, and consequently ranging with the *Proteles* of M. Isidore Geoffroy St. Hilaire, as a second genus intermediate between these two groups. The *Proteles*, however, partakes, in some degree, of the characters of the *Hyænas* ; the present animal, as we shall presently demonstrate more at large, is more



immediately interposed between the *Dogs* and *Ichneumons*, to the latter of which it bears a pretty close resemblance in external form and appearance. The name *Cynictis*, by which I propose to distinguish this genus, is intended to express the double relation which it bears, on the one hand, to the *Dogs*, and to the *Viverræ* generally on the other. The legs are high, and completely digitigrade; the toes long and well separated from one another; the claws long, curved, and moderately sharp, like those of the kindred genera *Herpestes* and *Ryzæna*; the forms of the head and body are likewise similar; but in the number of its toes, the *Cynictis* is intermediate between these two genera, there being five toes on the fore feet, and four only on the hind, a combination not found in any other genus of the *Viverra* family except the *Proteles*. The thumb, or inner toe of the fore feet, is placed considerably above the line of the other toes, as in the dogs and other completely *Digitigrade Quadrupeds*, and does not touch the ground when the animal stands or walks; the hind heel is very much elevated, and, as well as the metatarsus, completely covered with hair, the under part of the toes alone being naked and of a black colour. This part of the foot is divided into separate little pads or tubercles; and there is a large one on the inner surface of the fore feet, considerably above the others, which does not come in contact with the ground in ordinary progression, but which, from its elastic

nature, probably serves in this animal, as well as in the dogs, cats, &c., to break the fall in jumping, and other violent actions. In other respects there is nothing remarkable to be observed about the feet, except that the claws are long and moderately curved, very much compressed at the base, but broader towards the point, and hollowed or scooped out beneath like a spoon, so as to adapt them admirably to the purpose of burrowing beneath the soil. In their entire form and structure the organs of locomotion are thus in most respects perfectly similar to those of *Herpestes*, only that they are more completely digitigrade, in which character, as well as in the number of the toes, the *Cynictis* is more analogous to the *Dog* than to any genus of the *Viverra* family.

“ But it is in the characters of its dental system that this new genus most closely approximates to the *Civets*, and by which its situation in the system of nature is determined to be in contiguity with that family. The following formula expresses the number and arrangement of the teeth, according to the plan followed by M. F. Cuvier in ‘ Les Dents des Mammifères.’

38 Teeth...	{	20 superior ...	{	6 incisors	{	6 false
			2 canines	12 molars .....		2 carnassiers
		18 inferior ....	{	6 incisors	{	4 tuberculous
			2 canines	10 molars .....		6 false
						2 tuberculous.

“The incisors present nothing remarkable. They are small, equal, and arranged in a regular straight line ; those of the under jaw are in contact with the corresponding canine, those of the upper separated from it by a vacant space, which, in the reciprocal position of the jaws, is occupied by the lower canine. The canines themselves are sensibly flattened on the sides, with an obscure cutting edge behind ; those of the upper jaw are nearly straight, those of the lower slightly hooked backwards. The first false molar of the upper jaw is very minute, and in contact both with the canine and with the following false molar : it is a simple, irregularly conical rudiment, with a single root. The second is also of a conical form, with a large pointed lobe in the centre, and a small rudimentary lobe on each side of it : the third is about the same size as the second, and in all respects similar, excepting that it has a large additional lobe on its inner surface, which adds considerably to its breadth, and at once distinguishes it from all the other teeth. Next in succession follows the carnassier, which is as long as the second and third false molars together. In its general form it resembles the third false molar, consisting of a large trenchant lobe in the centre, with a smaller one on each side, and a blunt tuberculous lobe of considerable dimensions on its inner surface. The lateral lobes, however, are here much more developed than those of the false molars ; the posterior one, in par-

ticular, occupies nearly half the entire length of the tooth, and from its blunt, flattened form, appears to belong more properly to the tuberculous than to the carnivorous part of the dentition; and the internal lobe, which exhibits the same general characters, is likewise very large, and runs for a considerable way into the palate. A section of the whole tooth would form an obtuse-angled triangle, of which the anterior lobe would occupy the obtuse angle, and the interior and posterior lobes, the two acute angles respectively. The first tuberculous tooth is nearly half the length of the carnassier; but its breadth, or dimensions, measuring from the outer surface of the jaw inwards, is nearly three times that length: it is perfectly flat on the crown, from the effects of long use, but appears to have originally consisted of two distinct tubercles, one on the outer, the other on the inner surface, separated from one another by a deep depression. The second tuberculous tooth is, as to form, in all respects similar to the first, but is little more than half its size.

“In the under jaw the lateral incisors are separated from the canines by a vacant space, which receives the upper canine in the reciprocal position of the jaws. The three false molars are of the normal form of these teeth in general, resembling the second false molar of the upper jaw, but rather larger and more developed, and differing from one another in having the lateral lobes successively more distinctly

separated from the central, scarcely apparent in the first, but large and well-developed in the third. This latter tooth wants the interior tuberculous lobe of its corresponding analogue above, because the narrowness of the under jaw does not permit any development in that direction; there seems to be, nevertheless, a faint indication of it on the inner side of the posterior lateral lobe, almost in contact with the carnassier. The carnassier, also, owing to the same cause, is of a form essentially different from that of the upper jaw. It is a long and tolerably thick tooth, with a deep transverse depression in the middle, and a small furrow on the interior of the first half. This first part appears to have originally consisted of three small but distinct tubercles, one on the outside and two within, separated by the small furrow already mentioned. The heel of the tooth consists of a single large, flat tubercle, which, in the reciprocal position of the jaws, is opposed to the first superior tuberculous tooth: there is no interior tubercle, as in the upper carnassier, owing to the restraint imposed upon the development of the lower teeth in this direction by the comparative narrowness of the under jaw. The single tuberculous tooth is likewise influenced by the same cause. Its greatest dimensions are in a longitudinal direction, and it appears equally to have consisted originally of two tubercles, separated from one another by a transverse depression: in other respects it resembles the superior tuberculous teeth.

“ In their reciprocal position the crowns are not directly opposed to one another, as in herbivorous animals ; but those of the lower jaw pass on both sides within those of the upper, the tubercles of the one corresponding regularly to the depressions of the other, and thus forming an admirable instrument for cutting, which acts precisely upon the principle of a pair of scissors. The incisor and tuberculous teeth alone have their crowns in contact with one another, and for this purpose the latter teeth are situated considerably within the line of the other molars. The last tuberculous tooth of the upper jaw fits into the depression of its lower analogue, and the first, as has been already observed, into the depression which separates the tuberculous heel of the lower carnassier from the anterior lobes. The skull from which this description was taken being that of a very old animal, the sharp trenchant edges of the teeth were completely worn away, leaving the lobes universally of a blunt tuberculous form, and often rendering it a matter of some difficulty to trace their original characters.

“ This system of dentition is, in most respects, extremely similar to that which is common to the *Viverræ* in general, and particularly to the genus *Herpestes*, from which the *Cynictis* differs principally in the absence of the rudimentary false molar of the lower jaw, in having that of the upper jaw in contact with the canine, and in a few other circum-

stances of very minor importance when compared with the general characters of the organization. From the *Ryzæna* or *Suricate*, on the other hand, the dental system of the *Cynictis* differs in the presence of the superior rudimentary false molar, being thus directly intermediate, in point of dentition, between this genus and the *Herpestes*; and it is not a little singular that it should bear precisely the same relation to both these genera in the form and number of its toes. The *Herpestes* have rudimentary false molars both in the upper and under jaws, and five toes both before and behind; the *Cynictis* has rudimentary false molars only in the upper jaw, five toes on the fore, and only four on the hind feet; the *Ryzæna* has no rudimentary false molars in either jaw, and four toes only, as well on the anterior as on the posterior extremities. These traits of zoological character strongly point out the true natural relations of all these animals, and demonstrate the relative positions which they occupy in the system of nature. With the single exception of the *Proteles*, there is no other known genus of the *Viverra* family which possesses the same number of toes and complete digitigrade extremities which form so prominent a character in the *Cynictis*. Here, however, all analogy ceases between these two genera. It is true that we are at present ignorant of the adult characters of the dentition of the *Proteles*; when we become better acquainted with this important part of

its organization, we may perhaps discover additional points of relation between it and the present genus; but in all its most striking external characters it is completely different and seems to occupy an intermediate station between the *Dogs*, the *Civets*, and the *Hyænas*.

“ In addition to these characters, the *Cynictis* may be readily distinguished by its external form and appearance from all conterminous genera. It has a short head, contracted suddenly in front of the eyes, and forming a small naked muzzle, divided by a longitudinal furrow; the ears are short and elliptical, naked inside, and directed forwards; the body long and slender; the tail bushy, and two-thirds of the length of the body, and the whole external form and appearance not unlike that of a *Ferret* or *Ichneumon*. The temporal *fossæ* are separated from the orbits by a complete rim of bone.

“ I propose to distinguish the animal which has given rise to these observations, by the specific name of *Cynictis Steedmannii*, in compliment to Mr. Steedman, to whose enterprise we are indebted for our knowledge of this unique species. The following are the principal dimensions of this animal, taken from the skin, and measured along the curvatures.

	Ft.	In.
Length of the head from the muzzle to the root		
of the ear . . . . .	0	2½
Length of the ear . . . . .	0	¾



	Ft.	In.
Breadth of the ear . . . . .	0	1½
Length of the body from the muzzle to the root of the tail . . . . .	1	6
Length of the tail . . . . .	1	0
Height at the shoulder . . . . .	0	7
Height at the croup . . . . .	0	7½

“ The hair is of a moderately fine quality, much like that of a *Dog*, smooth and close on the body, long and bushy on the tail. The general colour, as well as the whole external appearance of the animal, is precisely that of a small *Fox*, bright red over the entire body, head and extremities, deep and uniform on the back, but mixed with silvery grey on the cheeks, neck, sides and tail, arising from a mixture of hairs tipped with grey, and dispersed through the fur of these parts. The breast, belly, and legs, are unmixed red ; and the tail, which precisely resembles the brush of a *Fox*, is covered with long bushy hairs of a sandy red colour at the roots, dark brown in the centre, and grey at the points : the last two inches at the tip of the tail are uniform dirty white. The hairs of the body are not annulated as in the *Herpestes* and *Suricate*, and they are altogether of a finer and more furry quality. The external form and appearance of this animal have been already compared to those of the *Ferret* and *Egyptian Ichneumon* ; but it probably stands higher on the legs than either of these species, being more completely digitigrade ; and its head is shorter and less pointed. The specimen here described was procured

in the neighbourhood of Uitenhage, on the borders of Caffraria\*.”

TEMMINCK'S PANGOLIN. (*Manis Temminckii*,  
Smuts.)

This is a very curious, and probably unique, specimen of a singular animal which has been partially described in Holland, since this individual was first brought to Europe. Dr. Smuts, the describer, named it in honour of the distinguished naturalist, under whom he had studied whilst pursuing his courses at Leyden. His materials were only a skeleton and some of the scaly plates with which, like the other pangolins, this species is covered. The greatest peculiarity of this one is the shortness of the head, as compared with the ordinary dimensions of that part in the other pangolins; it bears nearly the same proportion to that of other species, as the head of the weasel-headed armadillo does to that of the six-banded, and thus shows a relation of parallelism, or analogy between the species of the armadilloes and pangolins, quite in accordance with the remarkable affinity of their outward form, and of the hardened and scaly cases by which they are protected against external force. The great breadth of the body is another peculiarity of this animal; and so is the breadth of its tail, which is at the base as broad as the body, and is much less narrow towards its extremity, than in the other pangolins. The shortness

\* Zoological Transactions, Part I. p. 29—33.

of the skull, and the breadth of the transverse processes of the caudal vertebræ, are circumstances strongly insisted on by Dr. Smuts in his account of his skeleton ; and it is these characters that lead to the identification of his animal with the present. His skeleton was dug up in the regions beyond Litakou, and is now preserved in the Leyden Museum.

The present very perfect specimen was obtained in the neighbourhood of the same country, but of its habits little is known.

The evident marks of fire on the scaly surface of the back would lead to the conclusion that it had been burnt out of its abode.

AFRICAN HEDGEHOG. (*Erinaceus frontalis*,  
Bennett.)

This little animal was obtained by the author in Graham's Town, in 1830, whither it had been brought from the neighbourhood of Litakou, and was described by Mr. E. G. Bennett, Secretary to the Zoological Society, as the *Erinaceus frontalis*, on account of a remarkable band of long, white hairs, passing from below and behind the ears, across the forehead: a character at once distinguishing it from the several species of *Erinaceus* previously known\*.

\* I have recently ascertained that Dr. Smith had described this little quadruped in the South African Quarterly Journal, for October, 1831, p. 10.

“**ERINACEUS FRONTALIS.** *Er. oblongo ovatus*; spinis variè intertextis, ad basin albis, in medio purpurascentibus, versus apicem albidis-brunneo apiculatis; pilis brunneis, fasciæ frontalis albæ rigidis, auriculas oblongas obtegentibus. Hab. in Africâ Australi.

“*Long. corporis*  $5\frac{1}{2}$ , *lat.* 3 unc.; *long. auriculæ*, 7 lin.; *pedis postici cum unguibus*, 1 unc. 5 lin.

“In form this new species approaches the *European hedgehog*, which it also resembles in its general colouring and in its concealed ears; but these organs, although not at first sight visible, are, in the *Cape hedgehog*, long, their auricle, which is rather narrow and nearly oblong, being produced more than half an inch, while in the *Er. Europæus* this part is not at all lengthened, but forms merely a narrow margin surrounding the ears. In *Er. auritus*, and in the two species from the Himalayan mountains, recently described by Mr. Bennett (page 128), the auricles are not only considerably produced, but are quite uncovered, forming a striking part in the physiognomy of these animals.

“Among the brown hairs which cover the under part of the sides, and the belly and limbs, a few white bristles are intermixed; and in the individual exhibited, there is a white patch occupying the inside and base of one of the fore-legs, and a second, covering about one half of the lower jaw on one side: these marks Mr. Bennett regarded as accidental\*.”





THE STRAAND-WOLF.

The STRAAND WOLF. (*Hyæna villosa*, Smith.)

This new species of hyæna, only known to naturalists from the description of Dr. Smith, published some few years ago in the Transactions of the Linnean Society, and of which the individual in the Author's collection is the only specimen ever brought to this country, is found along the sea-coast throughout the whole extent of Southern Africa, but is by no means so common as the spotted hyæna, and therefore less perfectly known to the generality of the Colonists; indeed few of the inhabitants residing in the interior know of its being a distinct species, if at all acquainted with its existence, although it is well known by those residing along the southern shores, where it feeds upon carrion, and such things as are occasionally cast up by the ocean, as dead whales, &c.; but when food becomes scarce, it commits serious depredations upon the flocks and herds of the colonists, by whom its incursions are much dreaded. I saw a very fine specimen that had been shot by a farmer, of the name of Van Reenen, residing in the vicinity of Blauwberg, and was informed that it had destroyed three large calves belonging to the farmer. It is said to be a remarkably cunning animal, retiring to a considerable distance from the scene of its depredations in order to elude pursuit, and conceals itself during the day-time in the mountains, or in the thick bush, which extends in large patches

throughout the sandy district in which it is usually found. From its peculiar habit of frequenting the sea-coast, the Dutch colonists have given this animal the name of "*Straand wolf*," to distinguish it from the tiger wolf, or spotted hyæna, and the Aard wolf, or *Proteles* of zoologists, which are found throughout the Colony.

The following are the dimensions of the specimen from which this account has been drawn up:—

	Ft.	In.
From the nose to the root of the tail . . . . .	4	4
Height at the shoulder . . . . .	2	4
„ croup . . . . .	2	0
Breadth of the head between the ears . . . . .	0	5½
Length of head from nose to occiput . . . . .	0	10
Length of the ear . . . . .	0	5
Breadth of ditto . . . . .	0	4
Length of the tail to the extremity of vertebræ 9½, with hair	14	

The hair is remarkably long, coarse, and shaggy over the whole body of the animal; on the head, ears, and extremities alone, short and crisp. Its length on the back and sides is eight or ten inches, and it does not form a long mane on the spine, as is the case with the common hyæna (*H. vulgaris*). The general colour of the head, body, and extremities is grizzled brown, from the long hairs being greyish at the roots and brown at the points, marked on the sides and hips with large but rather indistinct transverse bands, of a deep vinous brown colour. The legs, particularly the fore, which, as in the other hyænas, are much longer than the hind,



are marked with transverse black bands much more distinct and apparent than those on the body. The upper lip is furnished with remarkably long, bristly, black moustaches, and the tail, which is thickly covered with long hair, and of greater length than in the common hyæna, is uniform dark brown. The fore arms and thighs are darker than other parts of the animal, and a large collar of dirty yellowish white surrounds the throat, and extends up the sides of the neck, occupying the entire space between the setting on of the head and the shoulders. Under each eye there is a large irregular black patch; the chin is likewise black, and a narrow band of the same colour marks the junction of the head and neck, bordered by the dirty-white collar just mentioned. The ears are large, erect, and rather pointed. The individual was aged, all the teeth being much worn. The two exterior incisors of the upper jaw are much larger than the others, and have the form and size of small canines.

A young puppy of this species, nineteen inches in length, and likewise in the Author's collection, exhibits all the general characters of the aged specimen just described, excepting that the hair is shorter and of a more woolly texture. The dark transverse bands on the sides and hips are little if at all more distinct than in the adult; but the dirty-white collar on the throat and neck is equally conspicuous. It was one of three obtained alive in the neighbourhood

the Nieuveld Mountains, a considerable distance in the interior of the country, which shows that the species is not so strictly confined to the vicinity of the sea-coast as its name would imply, or as the accounts of travellers would lead us to imagine.

AARD-WOLF, (*Proteles*, Is. Geof\*.,) in Zoology, a genus of digitigrade carnivorous mammals founded by M. Isidore Geoffroy St. Hilaire for the purpose of giving a place to a new and singular quadruped brought from the interior of Caffraria by the late traveller De Lalande. The three specimens of this interesting animal procured by M. De Lalande were all, unfortunately, of an immature age, and had not acquired their permanent teeth, so that the characters of their adult dentition still remain to be determined. Enough, however, is known to enable us to assign the most prominent and influential characters of the genus, and to infer, with a tolerable degree of accuracy, the habits and economy of the animal.

“ It is an observation at least as old as Pliny, that Africa is a land of wonders, which continually produces a succession of new and singular objects. In zoology, the maxim of the Roman philosopher, as to African wonders, is verified almost daily. Among the most recent examples of this fact we may adduce the discovery of the *Proteles*: an acquisition of peculiar interest to the zoologist, as forming the intermediate

\* The Penny Cyclopædia, vol. i., page 4.

link which connects the civets with the dogs and hyænas, three genera which have hitherto stood, as it were, insulated from surrounding groups, and widely separated from one another. The dogs and hyænas, indeed, had been united a short time previous by the discovery of an intermediate species in the same locality which has since produced the *Proteles*; but it is this latter species alone, which, uniting the characters of all these three genera, enables us to trace their natural affinities, and to assign to them their proper position in the scale of existence.

“ To the external appearance and osteological (bony) structure of a hyæna, this truly singular animal unites the head and feet of a fox, and the teeth and intestines of a civet. It has five toes on the fore feet, and four only on the hind; the innermost toe of the fore foot is placed, as in the dogs, at some distance above the others, and therefore never touches the ground when the animal stands or walks. The legs also are completely digitigrade; that is to say, the heel is elevated, and does not come into contact with the surface, as in man and other similarly formed animals which walk upon the whole sole of the foot, and are thence said to be plantigrade. It is of great importance to remark the difference between these two modifications of the locomotive organs, because they have a very decided and extraordinary influence upon the habits and economy of animal life. Digitigrade animals, which tread only upon

the toes and carry the heel considerably elevated above the ground, have much longer legs than plantigrade animals, and are therefore especially fitted for leaping and running with great ease and rapidity. Accordingly, it will be observed that the horse, the stag, the antelope, the dog, and other animals remarkable for rapidity of course, partake strongly of this formation ; and even their degree of swiftness is accurately measured by the comparative elevation of the heel. Inattentive observers sometimes misapprehend the nature of this peculiar conformation of the extremities of digitigrade animals, and are apt to confound the hough with the ankle, and to mistake for the knee what is really the heel of the animal. Thus we have heard it said that, in the hind legs of the horse, the knee was bent in a contrary direction to that of man. This is by no means true : a little attention to the succession of the different joints and articulations will show that what is called the cannon-bone in the horse, and other digitigrade animals, in reality corresponds to the instep in man, and that what is generally mistaken for the knee really represents the heel.

“ In the particular case of the *Proteles* the natural effect of the digitigrade formation is, in some degree, lessened by the peculiar structure of the fore legs, which, contrary to the general rule observable in most other animals, are considerably longer than the hind. In this respect, also, the *Proteles* resembles

the hyænas, and in both genera this singular disproportion between the anterior and posterior extremities abridges the velocity properly due to their digitigrade conformation. It has been already observed that the only individuals of this genus which have been hitherto properly observed were young specimens, which had not acquired their adult dentition; but it was sufficiently obvious to the experienced eye of M. Cuvier, who first examined them, that the dental system of the mature animal must very closely resemble, if it be not actually identical with, that of the civets and genets. The young animal presented three small false molars, and one tuberculous tooth on each side both of the upper and under jaws; and we shall find, in the sequel, that the approximation of M. Cuvier is fully justified by the evidence of another accurate observer, who had an opportunity of examining this animal in its native regions. The genus *Proteles* contains but a single species, the *Aard-wolf*, or earth-wolf (*Proteles cristata*), so called by the European colonists in the neighbourhood of Algoa Bay, in South Africa, the locality in which M. De Lalande procured his specimens of this animal. The size of the Aard-wolf is about that of a full-grown fox, which it further resembles in its pointed muzzle; but it stands higher upon its legs, its ears are considerably larger and more naked, and its tail shorter and not so bushy. At first sight it might be easily mistaken for a young striped hyæna, so closely does it resemble that animal in the colours

and peculiar markings of its fur, and in the mane of long stiff hair which runs along the neck and back : indeed, it is only to be distinguished by its more pointed head, and by the additional fifth toe of the fore feet. The fur is of a woolly texture on the sides and belly, but a mane of coarse, stiff hair, six or seven inches in length, passes along the nape of the neck and back, from the occiput to the origin of the tail, and is capable of being erected or bristled up like that of the hyæna, when the animal is irritated or provoked. The general colour of the fur is pale cinereous (ash-coloured), with a slight shade of yellowish-brown : the muzzle is black and almost naked, or covered only with a few long, stiff moustaches. Around the eyes, and on each side of the neck, are dark brown marks ; eight or ten bands of the same colour pass over the body in a transverse direction, exactly as in the common striped hyæna ; and the arms and thighs are likewise marked with similar transverse stripes. The legs and feet are an uniform dark brown in front, and grey behind. The long hairs of the mane are grey, with two broad rings of black, the second of which occupies the point ; those of the tail are similarly marked, and equally long and stiff ; whence it appears as if the mane and tail were clouded with an alternate mixture of black and grey. The ears are grey on the interior, and dark brown on the outer surface.

“ In its habits and manners the Aard-wolf resembles the fox : like that animal it is nocturnal, and

constructs a subterraneous burrow, at the bottom of which it lies concealed during the daytime, and only ventures abroad on the approach of night to search for food and satisfy the other calls of nature. It is fond of the society of its own species : at least, many individuals have been found residing together in the same burrow ; and, as they are of a timid and wary character, they have generally three or four different entrances to their holes, so that if attacked on one side they may secure a retreat in an opposite direction. Notwithstanding the disproportionate length of their fore legs, they are said to run very fast ; and so strong is their propensity to burrow, that one of M. De Lalande's specimens, perceiving itself about to be run down and captured, immediately ceased its flight, and began to scratch up the ground, as if with the intention of making a new earth."

GEMS-BOK, (*Antilope Oryx*, Pallas.)—Of all the fabulous animals of antiquity, whether produced by the fertile and unrestrained imagination of the Persians and Egyptians, or by the more chaste and classic taste of the Greeks, the unicorn is undoubtedly the most celebrated, and has in the most remarkable degree attracted the research and attention of the moderns. So strongly are the form and idea of this creature engraved in our minds, even from our earliest infancy, that it requires some degree of effort to persuade ourselves of its actual non-existence ; and it is

even with regret that we learn, that this peaceful being is the mere creature of fancy. It is not, therefore, surprising that the most celebrated zoologists and philosophers of modern times, Pallas, Camper, and Cuvier, have not disdained to investigate the origin and circumstances of this pleasing fiction, and to search among the productions of nature for the actual animal which suggested the idea of the unicorn. On all hands, this is admitted to have been the oryx, an animal somewhat larger than an ass, with cloven hoofs, very long straight horns, a short erect mane, of which the hair is reversed, or grows in an opposite direction from that of all other animals, a light, sandy-brown colour, often approaching to pale-grey, with shining black marks on the face and cheeks, and a black switch tail,—characters which render this animal particularly remarkable, and which have been accurately described by Appian, and other ancient authors. This compound of the characters of the horse and the goat, the horns and cloven hoofs of the one, and the erect mane, general form, and long switch tail of the other, is exactly what ancient and modern writers and painters have represented as uniting in the unicorn. A reference to the engraving of this animal (page 55) will show how small is the difference between the production of nature, and that of human invention, or rather, how slight are the alterations which have been made in the characters of the oryx in order to



represent the unicorn. And it is an incontestable fact, that even these alterations were gradual, and that the first idea of the unicorn arose simply from the representation of an oryx drawn in profile on the monuments of ancient Egypt and Persia. The sculptors of these figures, being ignorant of the art of perspective, could only *represent* a single horn in their profile, though the animal actually possessed two; and these figures being afterwards described, with all their errors of drawing and perspective, by Ctesias, Herodotus, and other travellers, as the representations of existing animals, the idea became universal among the ancients, that Africa and India produced unicorns, which are sometimes represented as horned asses, and sometimes as a large species of goat, with a horn in the centre of the forehead. The *Cartazonon* of the ancient Persians, figured on the monuments of Persepolis, and described by Ælian, is of the former description, viz., a wild ass with a long horn growing from the centre of the forehead, and the idea is in every respect so perfectly applicable to the oryx represented in profile, that there cannot be the slightest doubt respecting its origin. The size and proportions, the sandy-grey colour, the clean and graceful limbs and carriage, the erect mane and switch tail, are characters common both to the wild ass and to the oryx; and when it is remembered that both these animals are inhabitants of the deserts of Central Africa, and

that, though figured by native Persians, the descriptions of these figures were made and carried into Europe by stranger Greeks, it will readily be admitted that the misnomer of horned-ass, and the idea of the unicorn, were but the natural results of the imperfection of the representation, and the ignorance and credulity of their describers. Chance may also probably have contributed to strengthen the idea of the actual existence of the unicorn, if it did not originally give rise to it.

It is well known in Southern Africa that the oryx is a most dangerous animal to attack; he defends himself resolutely with his long straight horns, and with such success, that the lion himself dreads to encounter him, and never ventures upon the attack unless irresistibly compelled by the cravings of hunger; even then his temerity often costs him his life, and both combatants have been not unfrequently found dead together from mutual wounds. During the rutting season also, the males never meet without fighting; and as, during these encounters, it frequently happens that one or both lose a horn, it is not at all unlikely that individuals thus mutilated, (like the pair seen at Mecca by Belon,) and which, from the courage and quarrelsome disposition of the animals, must be sufficiently numerous, confirmed the idea of the unicorn which had been first taken from imperfect representations. The classic taste of the Greeks, having thus caught the idea of the uni-

corn, modified it so as to suit their own conceptions of its attributes of strength and agility; the limbs were lengthened, the heavy asinine proportions were reduced, the head was bent in the attitude of attack, and the horn, instead of growing backwards in the plane of the face, was represented as perpendicular to it, and springing directly out of the forehead. Such is the description of the fictitious animal still represented in the royal arms of England, and such seems to have been the origin and progress of the idea as originating in ancient Persia, and finally spreading over western Europe. The female is much more slender and delicately formed, and the horns considerably longer than those of the male; and it is remarkable, that they possess the sagacity of rendering them very destructive as weapons of defence, by sharpening them to a fine point, while those of the young are perfectly blunt.

---

The KOEDOE, (*Antilope Strepciceros*, Pallas.)

While descending the Fish River heights, the Hottentots observed three of these animals browsing on the Babylonian willows which thickly fringed its banks, and, taking my gun, I succeeded in shooting a female, which, however, immediately took to the water, and reached the opposite bank, although severely wounded. The koedoes live singly, or in pairs, in the woody districts of the eastern part of the Cape Colony, in Caffraria, and about the sources of

the Great, or Orange River, feeding on shrubs and the young shoots of trees; but they are becoming very scarce in the colony. They are very powerful and active, bounding with great force to a considerable height; but like the rest of those antilopes which are lower behind than before, they are not very fleet when pursued by dogs. The male, naturally bold, soon stands at bay and defends itself with great spirit.

The horns of the male are elegantly formed, and sometimes exceed three feet in length; yet, notwithstanding, it is a lover of the thorny brakes on the river banks.

#### ALLIGATOR COWIEIL. (*Smith.*)

This specimen I obtained at Graaf Reynet, whether it had been brought by Messrs. Schoon and M'Luckie, on their return from the Moriqua River, lying beyond Kurrichaine, where it abounds, and is very destructive to the natives. It is the first specimen ever brought to this country from South Africa, and has been named by Dr. Smith after the lamented traveller Cowie: it bears a very close resemblance to the alligator of the Nile, but is supposed to be a distinct species. It measures fourteen feet long, and four and a half round the body.

#### CAMELOPARDUS. (*Giraffe.*)

I procured specimens of the male and female of these singular animals. They are found on the

open plains several days' journey to the north of Litakou, in small troops of six or ten individuals, and feed principally upon the various dwarf species of acacia which grow abundantly in the arid deserts; are gentle and timid in disposition; and though formerly found within the boundaries of the Colony of the Cape of Good Hope, have not for many years past been known to pass the Gareep or Orange River, which separates it from the Griqua and Coranna country. It is a remarkable fact, that when this animal walks, it does not move the feet diagonally, like all other quadrupeds, but first moves the fore and hind feet of the same side, and then the opposite pair alternately, or the pace which is usually called an amble in horses.

This singular pace was observed by the ancients, who were well acquainted with the camelopard, and is expressly mentioned by Heliodorus. The name of giraffe, by which the animal is now most commonly known, is derived from its Arabic name "Zerapha, the elegant or graceful," and is the same as our common word seraph, used in scripture to designate a peculiar order of the angelic hierarchy.

In addition to the quadrupeds already described, I succeeded, in the course of these wanderings, in obtaining specimens of the following mammals and birds, which now form a part of my present collection.

- Harte Beeste, (*A. Caama*, Cuv.)  
 Reit-Bok, (*A. Eleotragus*, Schreb.)  
 Duiker-Bok, (*A. Mergens*, Blamville.)  
 Bosch-Bok, (*A. Sylvatica*, Sparrman.)  
 Kleene-Bok, (*A. Perpusilla*, H. Smith.)  
 Klip-Springer, (*A. Oreotragus*, Forster.)  
 Rhee-Bok, (*A. Caperolus*, Lichtenstein.)  
 Grys-Bok, (*A. Melanotis*, Lichtenstein.)  
 Spring-Bok, (*A. Euchore*, Forster.)  
 Steen-Bok, (*A. Tragalus*, Lichtenstein.)  
 Gnu, or Wilde Beeste, (*A. Gnu*, Gmelin.)  
 Bonte-Bok, (*A. Pygarga*, Pallas.)  
 Aard-vark, (*Orycteropus Capensis*, Geoff.)  
 African Elephant, (*E. Africanus*, Blumen.)  
 Spotted Hyæna, (*H. Capensis*, Desmarest.)  
 Panther or Leopard, the Tiger of the Cape, (*F. Pardus*, Auct.)  
 Lion, (*F. Leo*, Linnæus.)  
 Black-footed Cat, (*F. Nigripes*, Burchell.)  
 Spring Haas, (*Helamys Capensis*, Desm.)  
 Cape Jackal, (*C. Mesomelas*, Desm.)  
 Zorille, or Cape Polecat, (*M. Zorilla*, Gmel.)  
 Genet, (*V. Genetta*, Linn.)  
 Ratel, (*Ratelus Melivora*, Desmarest.)  
 Yzer Varke (*Hystrix cristata*, Linn.)  
 Zwart Aas Vogel, (*Vultur Auricularis*, Shaw.)  
 Vaal Aas Vogel, (*Vultur fulvus*, Gmel.)  
 Tufted Vulture, (*Vultur occipitalis*, Burchell.)  
 Witte Kraai, (*Vultur percnopterus*, Gmel.)

- Arend, (*Gypætus barbatus*, Cuv.)  
 Berghaan, (*Aquila Vulturina*, Shaw.)  
 Chok, (*Aquila bellicosa*, Daudin.)  
     (*Aquila rapax*, Burchell.)  
 Fishing Eagle, (*Pandræn Haliætus*.)  
 Secretary Falcon, (*Gypegeranus Serperitarius*.)  
 Crowned Eagle, (*Falco occipitalis*, Daud.)  
     (*Falco ecaudatus*, Shaw.)  
 Valk, { (*Falco Peregrinus*, Linn.)  
         (*Circus Carnivorus*.)  
         (*Falco Musicus*, Daud.)  
         (*Circaëtus pectoralis*, Smith.)  
 Jackal Vogel, (*Falco Jackal*, Shaw.)  
 Horned Owl, (*Bubo Copenses*, Le Vaill.)  
 Zwart Kraai, (*Corvus*, Pilarus.)  
 African Hornbill, (*Buceros Africanus*.)  
 Natal Lory, (*Corythaix Burchellii*, Smith.)  
 Cape Lory, (*Corythaix Persa*, Le Vaill.)  
     (*Coracias Africanus*.)  
 Bald Ibis, (*Ibis Calva*.)  
 Sacred Ibis, (*Ibis Religiosa*.)  
 Mud Ibis, (*Ibis Tantalus*.)  
 Scarlet Flamingo, (*Phænicopterus Ruber*.)  
 Blue Crane, (*Anthropoides Stanleyii*.)  
 Caffer Crane, (*Balearica Pavonina*, Vig.)  
 Stork, (*Ciconia*, Viol.)  
 Common Heron, (*Ardea Cinerea*.)  
 Heron, (*Ardea Egretta*.)  
     (*Buphaga Africanoides*, Smith.)  
 Kingfisher, (*Alcedo Natalensis*, Smith.)

- Cape Kingfisher, (*Alcedo Capensis.*)  
 Crested Kingfisher, (*Alcedo Cristata.*)  
 Spotted Kingfisher, (*Alcedo Pica.*)  
 Blue Kingfisher, (*Alcedo Martin bleu.*)  
 Great Kingfisher, (*Alcedo Maxima.*)  
 Pelican, (*Pelecanus Onocrotalus.*)  
 Ostrich, (*Struthio Camelus.*)  
 Black-throated Pauw, (*Otis Coleii*, Smith.)  
 Red-necked Pauw, (*Otis Ruficollis*, Cuv.)  
 Brown Koran, (*Otis Torquata*, Smith.)  
 Black Koran, (*Otis Afer*, Smith.)  
 Karoo Koran (*Otis Vigorsii*, Smith.)  
 Blue-bellied Koran, (*Otis Veronii*, Smith.)  
 Kuif Pauw, (*Otis Arabs*, Cuv.)  
     (*Fulica Porphyria.*)  
     (*Scopus Umbretta.*)  
     (*Columba Torquata.*)  
     (*Columba Capensis.*)  
     (*Columba Aquatrix.*)  
     (*Columba Purpurea.*)  
     (*Cinnyris Famosa.*)  
     (*Cinnyris Aurifrons.*)  
     (*Vidua Payennensis.*)  
     (*Merops Apiaster.*)  
     (*Upupa Capensis.*)  
     (*Caprimulgus Torquatus.*)  
     (*Lanius Barbaru.*)  
     (*Elanus Melanopterus.*)  
     (*Hemipodius Hottentottus.*)



- (*Lanius Collaris.*)  
(*Upupa Promerops.*)  
(*Passer Capensis.*)  
(*Saxicola Pileata.*)  
(*Cuculus Auratus.*)  
(*Cuculus Copurus.*)  
(*Cuculus Klaas.*)  
(*Charadrius Coronatus.*)  
(*Ædicnemus Crepitans.*)  
(*Tetrao Coturnix.*)  
(*Pterocles Namaquai.*)  
(*Rhynchoa Capensis.*)  
(*Loxia Padda.*)  
    &c. &c. &c.
-

## CHAPTER II.

Caffer Irruption—Speech of an old Caffer Chief—State of the Country previous to the War—Cause of the frequent collisions between the Colonists and Caffers—Border Policy—Moral condition of the People.

WHILE this work was preparing for the press, intelligence reached this country from the Cape of Good Hope of a sudden and unexpected irruption of the Caffers upon the eastern frontier of the Colony, threatening destruction to the recently-flourishing settlement of Albany, and overcasting, for a time at least, those bright prospects which appeared to be opening on every side for the spread of light and truth throughout the Caffer country.

The change that has thus unhappily taken place in the aspect of affairs, in consequence of this irruption, has disturbed the repose of the land, and precipitated it into a state of anarchy and strife; but although a cloud may be passing over the moral sun in that interesting country, yet the day is not far distant when its bright beams shall again break forth, dispelling the darkness and gloom which now envelope this portion of the African continent.

Indeed, by the last accounts matters were assuming a more favourable aspect; and however much this catastrophe may be deplored, yet the final issue must doubtless be beneficial, as leading to a

more efficient system of policy than has hitherto been adopted, and to the establishment of a firm and settled intercourse between the colonists and native tribes. The following extract from a pamphlet lately published will be found to corroborate the statements already advanced relative to the progress of civilization amongst the Caffer tribes previously to the unhappy differences which have lately taken place. “‘How long,’ said Gaika, one of their principal Chiefs, who obtained permission, some time before his death, to visit one of the most advanced military posts, ‘are we to continue at war? Shall we never eat our corn together in peace?’ The officer he addressed replied, ‘Are we not at peace? and have we not been so for a very long time?’ ‘Do you white men call this peace?’ replied the African; ‘it is not so with us; after our wars are over, we trade together. My people want beads, and knives, and hatchets, and your people want ivory and cattle; let them exchange with each other by daylight, instead of shooting at them, when they by night cross yonder river. Let the waters of the Keiskamma flow on in peace to the great ocean, without being discoloured by our blood, and then we should know that war had really and indeed ceased.’ Happily for humanity a more liberal policy (although much is remaining yet to be done) has greatly improved the aspect of affairs since that period. Many hundreds of English traders are now residing, some

with their families, in the very heart of the Caffer country, where they have erected shops, and are carrying on a mutually beneficial traffic, whilst the Missionaries, who have gradually increased and extended their excellent institutions to the very extremity of some of the remoter tribes, have, by their uniform good conduct, cautious policy, and moral tuition, obtained such an influence over this untutored race, as none a few years back could possibly have anticipated. To this the writer can bear ample personal testimony, from having twice visited their institutions in this interesting country. Indeed it may be stated that the traders owe much to the influence thus acquired by the Missionaries; for as the Government declines interfering in any dispute that may occur across the border, the Chiefs have such respect to the Missionaries, that the few bickerings which trading begets are soon settled. It is not attempted to be denied that robberies of cattle are still permitted by natives along the extreme border, but an alteration of the system at present pursued it is understood will shortly take place, which there is good reason to hope will speedily put an end to such irregularities, by the establishment of sound moral checks, and a just and amicable policy\*.”

It is a circumstance much to be regretted that,

\* Advantages of Emigration to Algoa Bay and Albany, South Africa, by Thomas Phillips, Esq., one of the Justices of the Peace in that district, 1834.

notwithstanding fourteen years' friendly intercourse has been kept up with the Caffer nation, and ample means afforded of becoming thoroughly acquainted with their character, and the feelings they entertained of the system pursued towards them, such a period should have been allowed to pass away without removing the cause of grievances complained of, and establishing a better system of policy amongst them.

I am happy to be enabled to lay before the reader a concise and impartial statement of the ostensible and primary cause which appears to have led to the present unhappy state of affairs in that distracted country, from the pen of the Rev. W. Shaw, who has recently addressed a letter to the Earl of Aberdeen on the subject, and who, from his knowledge of the character and language of the Caffers, obtained during a residence of many years in their country, together with an intimate acquaintance with the measures adopted by the Colonial Government towards them, is pre-eminently qualified for the task he has undertaken, and entitled to a degree of attention which few others can claim.

“Every one asks,” says Mr. Shaw, “what has been the cause of this ruthless attack by the Caffers? Doubtless your Lordship would be glad to obtain a satisfactory answer to this question. I will endeavour to give it. But before I do so, permit me to perform an act of justice to the British settlers of Albany.

Some of the public prints, in reporting these occurrences, have charged the settlers with exercising cruelty and injustice towards the native tribes, and have more than insinuated that the Caffers have been thereby goaded into retaliation. Now, my Lord, I wish most distinctly to state that I believe this to be an unfounded calumny. I profess myself, and am very well known to be a devoted friend of the native tribes; but I will not be a party in the advocacy of their rights, on principles which involve an aggression on the character and claims of others. *Fiat justitia, ruat cœlum.* I cannot perceive that true philanthropy requires me to blacken my white friends, for the purpose of making my black friends white.

“ I admit it is possible that instances of flagrant injustice exercised by individual settlers towards Caffers may have taken place; nay, I believe some such cases have actually occurred: but it is manifestly unjust to charge upon a whole community the faults of individuals. The ready co-operation of a very large and influential portion of the settlers in every religious and benevolent institution established by the Missionaries of various denominations, with a view to the propagation of the Gospel, and the general improvement of the native tribes, ought in justice to be taken as full evidence of their friendly feeling towards the aborigines, and of their being incapable of the cruel conduct which has been so thoughtlessly and unfairly imputed to them.

“That our *border policy*—if such a designation can be given to the most changeful and contradictory course of proceeding ever adopted by any civilized government—has been full of errors, and has sometimes placed those who have had to execute its arrangements in the painful situation of appearing the champions of injustice and cruelty, are truths that cannot be denied: but I do not sympathize with those who charge the evils now deplored either upon the military officers, on whom the duty of enforcing the border policy devolved; or upon the settlers, who have for years suffered the mischiefs resulting from it, and who have long and loudly called for the substitution of a more just and efficient system.

“I am the more anxious to disabuse your Lordship of the unfavourable opinion which may have been induced by the statements contained in various recent publications on this subject, because they are calculated to deprive the settlers of that sympathy and help which British subjects have a right to expect from their own countrymen and government, when they are, as in this instance, suddenly, and without any fault of their own, plunged into distress and trouble; and I have good reasons for believing, that, in defending the settlers from the gross imputations which have been cast upon them, I am expressing the sentiments of my brethren the Missionaries, and also of the highly respectable clergymen of the episcopal church now resident in that country.

“ In most inquiries as to the cause of those frequent collisions between the Caffers and the Colonists, which have gradually produced the late terrible catastrophe, it appears to me that the principal source of the evil has been almost, if not altogether, overlooked by many persons who have otherwise very distinctly pointed out various concurrent circumstances which have tended to give it greatly augmented force ;—*I refer to the moral state and habits of the Caffer tribes.* From the days of Vaillant, it has been the practice of various writers to give such glowing descriptions of the noble and generous-minded Caffers, that many persons, after reading their publications, find it difficult to believe that a Caffer Chief would degrade himself by sanctioning robbery and murder. Nothing can be more misleading than statements which produce this impression. That there exists in the minds of many of the Chiefs a proud self-respect, which sometimes produces a noble bearing, and magnanimous conduct, I can testify ; and it is a quality which might be turned to advantage by a skilful agent of government : but they have very indistinct notions of the rights of property, and they are fearfully reckless of the destruction of human life.

“ They are not wholly ignorant of the science, or destitute of a form of government ; but that which has been established amongst them from time immemorial is something like the ancient feudal system of



Europe,—a kind of government which unhappily is very favourable to the doctrine, that ‘might gives right.’ All nomadic tribes are robbers, unless the propensity be checked by religion, or by circumstances which they cannot control. Within these limitations the Caffers may be regarded as coming under the general rule; for, while the Chiefs protect in a considerable degree the rights of property among their own vassals, the tribes have ever been addicted to engage in war with each other for the purpose of carrying off the cattle of their neighbours. The frequent robberies committed by them, within the Colony, ought not therefore to be attributed wholly to any aggressions of the Colonists; but may fairly be ascribed, in a great degree, to their own imperfect moral perceptions, deeply-rooted habits, and defective mode of government.

“ Let me not, however, be misunderstood. The Caffers have not been exclusively, and in every instance, to blame. *Our border policy is extremely bad*; and by this means we have often undesignedly excited the cupidity, and exasperated the feelings, of a people who, although naturally prone to make inroads upon their neighbours, were, during the last few years, beginning to cherish the opinion that it would be their interest to cultivate peace with the Colony. It is but recently that attempts to improve their moral state, by the diffusion of Christianity, have been encouraged by the Colonial government;

and, long before the Missionaries established themselves in the country, various deadly feuds betwixt the Caffers and the border Dutch farmers had been engendered; the effects of which could hardly be expected to be speedily obliterated.

“ Not only has our Government pursued no efficient measures for the improvement of the Caffer tribes, but the plan adopted for the regulation of the affairs of the frontier has been extremely injudicious. Instead of a regular system, well-defined, properly adapted to the local circumstances of the country, and steadily acted upon, there has been nothing like a system at all. Sometimes the mode of treatment has been harsh and severe, at other times mild and conciliatory. Occasionally the Caffers were almost frightened into the belief that we intended their destruction; and at other periods they were suffered to carry on their depredations with such impunity, as to tempt them into the opinion that we were afraid of them: threatenings have occasionally been denounced, which were never intended to be executed; and promises have been made, which were never fulfilled. The effects of this contradictory mode of proceeding upon an untutored, but warlike, race, strong from their number, may easily be imagined.

“ I cannot, within the limits which I have pre- to myself, enter into details in proof of these statements. Indeed, they need no proof: the facts are

notorious; and they have for years formed the subject of complaint by the Missionaries, by the settlers of all classes and of every variety of opinion on other points, and even by not a few of the officers of Government, civil and military, who have found themselves embarrassed and thwarted in their zealous efforts to promote the peace of the frontier, by the contradictory and inappropriate regulations which have been from time to time prescribed to them.

“ In consequence of certain difficulties and scruples respecting international law, (the absurdity of attempting to apply the strict rules of which, in the intercourse betwixt a civilized and barbarous people, I shall not now stop to prove,) no direct and official mode of communication betwixt the Chiefs and the Colonial authorities has been established. There does not exist a single *written* treaty, to which, after due explanation, the Caffer Chiefs have become contracting parties. I beg leave to furnish the following statement, as an illustration of the evils arising from this source :—

“ A kind of agreement was made with Gaika in 1819, by which our Government understood that he ceded the lands, now called the ‘ Neutral Territory;’ but the Chiefs of the Amagonakwaybie tribe, Pato, Kama, Cobus, &c., affirm that they were not parties to that treaty, although they lost by it the whole of their ancient territory, and that by the usages of the Caffer nation, Gaika, the Chief of another tribe, had

no right to dispose of their lands without their consent. Some time afterwards, Makomo, the son of the late Gaika, re-established his clan on a certain tract of the Neutral Territory, by the connivance of the Colonial Government. At length, however, this land, a very fine and beautiful tract, was wanted for the purpose of forming a Hottentot settlement, and Makomo, whose people were charged with committing various depredations on the Colony, was warned to remove with his clan from the lands in question; but he refused, alleging that they had never been ceded by his father, and entering into a dispute as to the boundaries fixed in 1819, which he maintained preserved a portion of the Kat River Mountains, as Caffer Territory. The colonial Government, however, notwithstanding the mediation of some of the Missionaries, persisted in its claim, and the Caffers were forcibly expelled by our troops, their huts being burned to prevent them from returning to occupy the lands.

“ I have the more especially detailed this proceeding, because I believe it has a very close connexion with the causes of the recent irruption into Albany. The Caffers may have been chafed by the foolish, not to say unjust practice, of pursuing stolen cattle beyond the boundary, and making reprisals not always upon the guilty parties, but frequently upon those who had no connexion with the transaction, nor any means of preventing it;—they may have been vexed in this

way ; but I am persuaded that the ‘ *sore place in the heart,*’ as they themselves would phrase it, was occasioned by the forcible seizure of their lands. Residing in Caffraria at the time, I had opportunities of observing how greatly the Caffers were exasperated ; and, if Makomo could have persuaded the other Chiefs to unite with him, I have no doubt, that disasters similar to those we now deplore would have happened some time ago.

“ It was doubtless every way just and expedient that lands should be granted to the industrious and deserving portion of the Hottentots at the period to which I have alluded ; but it always appeared to me, and many other persons, that the friends of that race placed themselves in a false position, when they concurred in the acceptance by the Hottentots of lands, the title to which, to say the least, was of a very equivocal nature. For, assuming that Makomo and his Chiefs were mistaken as to the question of boundaries, still the ground had been ceded as ‘ Neutral Territory ;’ and we certainly could have no right to occupy the country with British subjects, without the consent of at least the Chiefs who had been parties to the original arrangement in 1819.

“ In making these statements, I beg leave to disclaim the slightest intention of imputing blame to any individual. These border affairs were originally rendered obscure and difficult to be understood by the want of system ; and as no regular method of

conducting them has ever yet been introduced, they have, of course, gradually become so entangled, that no Governor of the Colony, resident in Cape Town, and constantly receiving from the frontier the most conflicting statements, how great soever his talent and tact for business, can possibly obtain a thorough acquaintance with them. If, therefore, serious errors have been committed, instead of imputing them to highly distinguished persons who have held the reins of Government at the Cape, I would account for them by referring to the impracticable nature of their duties, so far as concerns our border policy; occasioned principally by the great distance of the seat of Government (six or seven hundred miles) from the boundaries of the Colony.

“ Thus you will perceive that I attribute the present disturbed state of the Caffers border, not to any cruelties perpetrated by the British settlers upon the Caffers; not to any want of humanity in the British officers in their treatment of the native tribes, or of zeal and activity in the protection of British lives and property; but to the moral state and predatory habits of the Caffers, the evil tendencies of which have been aggravated by the exceedingly mischievous character of our border policy.”

APPENDIX.





## A P P E N D I X.

---

  
No. 1.

Some particulars of the Expedition lately dispatched from Cape Town, Cape of Good Hope, for the purpose of exploring Central Africa. —Account of the Progress of Discovery in South Africa, up to the period of the departure of the Expedition.

WITHIN the last few years a vast fund of information has been obtained, relative to the country lying to the north and east of Litakou, from the various trading parties who have from time to time succeeded in exploring those regions which have so long lain as a blank on all our Maps of Southern Africa.

A party, under the direction of Messrs. Hume and Muller, returned to the colony in 1833, after having been absent nearly two years, during which period they succeeded in penetrating to the tropic ; and from the favourable descriptions given of the country and its productions, a party of gentlemen, members of the South African Literary and Scientific Institution, were induced to form an association in Cape Town, under the patronage of his Excellency Sir Lowry Cole, then Governor of the Cape, for the purpose of sending a scientific expedition to explore those regions, with the object of elucidating their geography, the nature of their productions, and the advantages they might offer to

commercial enterprise. In July, 1834, the party who had undertaken this bold and hazardous enterprise, left Cape Town under the direction of Dr. A. Smith, assistant staff surgeon, a distinguished naturalist of great talent and experience, appointed by the committee as director of the expedition. The departure of this expedition appears from the colonial papers to have created an unusual degree of interest throughout the Colony, as will be seen by the following extract of a letter, published in the 'South African Commercial Advertiser,' of the 18th of June, 1834 :

“ Dr. Smith enters upon this expedition with the respect and affection of all who know him ; and it will be consoling to him when in the pathless desert, and far from the haunts of civilized men, to look back to the marks of esteem and affection shown him on this occasion. While he views with satisfaction the feelings of deep interest which the circumstances of his departure have created, he will not need to feel for a moment that that interest has been lessened by his absence. No ; he will live in the remembrance of the people of Cape Town : they will follow him in their imaginations, when they shall have heard of his departure from the last of the Missionary Stations : they will be continually looking for intelligence from him and his party, when they shall have passed the limits of the remotest tribes that have any intercourse with the peninsula of Africa ; and every favourable report of his progress that may reach us, will diffuse a general gladness over the community which will be seen in the countenance of the child, and of the domestic, while the Christian will bear him upon his heart at a throne of grace. The interest created by this expedition will not be confined to Cape Town ; its object is universal ; and the interest taken in it will have no narrower limits than the civilized world.

“ The manner in which this expedition connects the interests of science with religion, forms a feature in it as striking as it is novel. The Christian religion and science belong to one family,—they naturally support each other, and they invariably flourish where that alliance by which the Almighty has bound them together is held sacred. Science is indebted to the Christian religion for the only soil in which its seeds can spread themselves over the world, and impart to men blessings of civilized life; and without science, Christian Missionaries, and the Christian Scriptures, and all the apparatus necessary for printing, and schools, would never have found their way over the trackless ocean, or over the African desert, to evangelize and bless mankind. The dark superstitions of Africa, the belief of the natives in witchcraft, and in their Rain-makers, and the notions entertained by the Hindoos and Chinese of the phenomena of nature, of the causes of eclipses, and of the revolutions of the heavenly bodies, &c., &c., being interwoven with their religious belief, are scarcely more opposed to the religion of Christ than they are to the acknowledged principles of pure science; and while the Missionaries are educating the population of those regions in the knowledge of the first principles of religion, giving them a taste for European science, science is, on the other hand, shaking the foundations of their erroneous belief, and preparing the way for the final triumph of Christianity. Impressed as we are with the importance of this union, we cannot help regarding with more than usual interest, an expedition in which, for the first time, are seen our men of science and our Missionaries. We can scarcely conceive of an undertaking that will excite a more deep and universal interest, than the report of an expedition to explore Central Africa, conducted as this is; accompanied by Missionaries from Berlin, the capital of

Prussia; welcomed in its progress by the Missionaries of the different nations; and on the farthest verge of that part of this continent on which we have yet a station; receiving the parting blessing of the Missionaries of France—a blessing which will be echoed by the Church of Christ in Britain; by those of France and Germany; by hundreds of thousands on the continent of America who have heard the cry of Africa for help, and who are now looking anxiously to that very region to which this expedition is destined, in which to plant the germ of religion and civilization; and by the philosopher and the philanthropist of every clime.”

---

INSTRUCTIONS ADDRESSED TO THE DIRECTOR OF  
THE EXPEDITION INTO CENTRAL AFRICA, BY THE  
COMMITTEE OF MANAGEMENT.

*To Dr. ANDREW SMITH, (or the) Director (for the time being) of the Expedition into Central Africa.*

SIR,

In offering to you certain general instructions for the purpose of elucidating their views as to the object and conduct of the enterprise committed to your direction, the Committee of Management take the earliest opportunity of expressing their confident reliance on your zeal, talents, and experience, as of themselves enabling you to apprehend and provide for the proper object and most beneficial detail in such an undertaking; and they therefore expect that you should not consider yourself bound by any decision of theirs, to adopt or reject, in deference to their opinion, any measures of which their views at present do not coincide with the

judgment you may be led to form in your progress. They feel certain, moreover, that any measure which you may conceive it necessary to adopt, amid the unforeseen occurrences of this enterprise, will meet with approbation from the shareholders. As, however, amid the incidents to be considered and provided for as contingent, the expedition may be deprived of your services, it is the wish of the Committee, that the intention and the proper course of proceeding, as far as such can be determined at present, should be defined and rendered familiar to the parties composing the expedition.

It is to be hoped that this may be only the first of a series of efforts prosecuted by the same means, and deriving their support from the same sources: but the fulfilment of this expectation must evidently depend in a great degree on its success. We cannot expect that our limited Colonial Society should feel justified in supporting any measure tending to sacrifice its valuable members and waste its resources, for objects solely of contingent and distant benefit, should it happen that the consequences of this endeavour confirm the impression of peril attendant on the view generally taken of it. However wide and promising therefore may be the views of benefit we entertain as about to arise from the knowledge we may gather, or the means and sources of commercial and scientific enterprise which the expedition may unveil, these views must be held in subservience to the recollection that the unimpeded progress and absolute safety of this one is of paramount importance as a guide, model, and inducement to others. This, therefore, is ever to be kept in view, and first considered in all its undertakings; and any measure obviously unsafe, even though its advantages, supposing it successful, should seem to be eminent and many, ought to be carefully avoided. While our failure would, by its effects on society here, necessarily damp our prospects of future

benefit, it is to be apprehended that it would also have a disastrous influence on the natives to be visited. Even disaster from natural causes might diminish the impression of European skill and power; and acting on the excited superstition of the savage, might quench his desire for our intercourse: and should it arise from the rapacious ferocity of the native tribes, it would erect a more serious obstacle to future progress in their gratified appetite for plunder, and their jealousy of retaliation. These views should inspire especial caution in regard to every proceeding, or even verbal inquiry among tribes, where it is to be suspected such lamentable incidents have occurred. The impression of its safe advance and return, and of any benefits it may confer on those whom it visits, will unquestionably proceed far in advance of its presence, and necessarily subdue or weaken those obstacles which may at present restrain its proceedings within regions where the Colonial influence may in some respects be considered as overlooking its movements and watching for its safety.

Our inquiries lead us to anticipate that the natives of the interior districts adjoining this colony are generally disposed to welcome the approach of travellers, and to treat them respectfully; lest, however, the opportunity of easily acquiring by plunder what they covet should prove too tempting for their respect or caution, it is requisite that such an apparent preparation to repel assaults should be preserved as may render it obviously perilous to the assailants; separation of the party must therefore be avoided when holding intercourse with them, and if a division should be unavoidable, the main body must be kept in sufficient strength, and held in readiness to aid the detachments or serve as a refuge for them. It will best accord with the object of the expedition; that not only every reasonable probability of avoiding col-

lision should be shunned, but that all scenes and situations offering any likelihood of its occurrence, should be well examined before they are approached.

It will be inconsistent with any beneficial result, that, in its progress outwards, the expedition should force its way through the territory of any tribe disposed to resist it. If no persuasive means be found of avail to overcome their repugnance, the advance in that direction must cease. It is only in case of the party itself being attacked or beset by a force showing an obvious disposition to assail it, and a determination to oppose its progress in any direction, or in case of the defiles of a territory being occupied and closed against its return, that the Committee can reckon it justifiable to exercise upon the lives and persons of the natives those formidable means of warfare with which the expedition has been furnished. It will be proper that each individual attached to the expedition should have a determinate station, in which it is expected that he shall be found in cases of emergency; and it will be well that the measures necessary to be adopted should be fully illustrated and impressed upon all, by such previous training as circumstances may admit of.

In regard to the territory the expedition is to visit, there are two methods in which it may arrive at beneficial results. It may either sweep rapidly over a great length of country, with the object of attaining the most distant point which the time allotted to it, or the duration of its resources may enable it to reach; or it may leisurely examine in detail, throughout its length and breadth, the condition, capabilities, and productions of a district of more manageable dimensions. The Committee conceive that the former might perhaps be the more interesting mode of proceeding, on account of the greater probability of romantic peril, adventure, or discovery;

but that these very circumstances of greater uncertainty and danger do, in this case, preclude our aiming at the apparently barren honour of exciting wonder, and of throwing a partial and obscure light on an extended region; the Committee therefore assume that the last-mentioned of the two courses is in all respects more accordant with the views and interests of the subscribers, as expressed in the prospectus; the Committee therefore recommend that no endeavour be made to penetrate beyond the parallel of  $20^{\circ}$  south latitude, and that the attempt to reach that parallel be made only if, in the first place, circumstances favour it greatly; and, secondly, if the intervening districts do not afford objects of sufficient interest and importance to occupy the attention of the expedition. The territory limited by that boundary is about four times the extent of the British Islands. It is in truth to be anticipated, that the wide regions between the Cape Territory and the southern tropic will have sufficient extent and variety for the time and resources to be employed in our present undertaking.

It will, therefore, be advisable that the expedition consider Klaar Water (Griqua Town), or Litakou, as the starting point or base of their operations, and that its first effort be the examination of the district from which issue the northern branches of the Gareep, and the streams which fall down to the Indian Ocean; that then the dividing ridge be traced towards the north, leaving it to the discretion of the director to determine at what parallel he should change his course, to the north or west. Our present information leads us to consider it advisable that the eastern side of the slope be examined first, in order that if the great desert of Challahenga should extend far to the eastward, so as to bar the progress of the expedition towards the centre of the continent, there may remain the unexplored



territory along the western slope to occupy its attention in returning.

Much of the ultimate importance and interest, as well as the security of guidance and prospect of safe return to the expedition, will of course depend upon our obtaining an exact knowledge, and preserving a faithful record of its route, which can only be done by the aid of astronomical observations made with due regularity and precaution, not only at such stations as form the most interesting features at the moment, in the eyes of those concerned, but at every station where the expedition may rest long enough to permit observations to be taken deliberately, and with due regard to the safety both of the observer and instruments. The track of a caravan on land, as of a ship at sea, is defined, as well by the less, as the more remarkable points through which it passes; and it may very easily happen, that stations of the highest interest in a commercial, political, or physical point of view, may, by reason of that very interest, be inappropriate for selection as principal observing stations, either from the attention of every individual being distracted to duties of immediate necessity, or from the risk attending the exhibitions of instruments in the unavoidable presence of a rude, curious, and suspicious population. In all such cases, it will be proper to connect, by observations of a less elaborate nature, those stations with others not far distant, which, although less intrinsically important, may be easier of exact determination. The Committee would, therefore, recommend, that stations of observation be classed as either primary or secondary. Those to be considered primary stations, whenever the circumstances may appear particularly favourable, by reason of leisure from other occupations, expected duration of halt, and freedom from annoyance, to afford a good determination of the longitude and latitude, such as may

serve to render them useful for zero points, to which the secondary stations may be referred either by dead reckoning of time and distance, or by such less elaborate observation as can be obtained at the secondary stations themselves. Of course, however, should circumstances permit, the more important in other respects the point which can be made a primary observing station the better; and the Committee would expressly notice Griqua Town, Litakou, Curechane, and Meletta, as points of which the geographical position should be determined with care by observations on the spot, and the observations then made be transmitted home along with the latest communication with the Colony. Since, however, the circumstances which may render stations objectionable, as primary points, are mostly of a moral, or political nature, it is expected no great difficulty will occur in fixing them at positions of especial geographical interest,—as at the confluence of rivers, at the extreme borders, or on the culminating points of mounting ranges, on remarkable rocks, &c.,—or at least of determinating their bearings and relative situations with respect to such prominent features with some degree of exactness. A combination of circumstances of this kind of local interest will of course have its due weight in determining (*cæteris paribus*) the halt of the expedition.

At primary stations the Committee recommend the assiduous application of every instrumental means for the determination of the three elements of latitude, longitude, and elevation above the level of the sea, and especially at such stations, as many series of lunar distances as possible should be procured in addition to the usual sights for time; (or observations of the altitudes of the heavenly bodies near the prime vertical) which, together with meridian observations for the latitude, they would recommend to be practised

daily, as a matter of regular duty at every station, as well primary as secondary. At primary stations also the barometer and thermometer should be observed at regular intervals, and the magnetic variation ascertained by taking the sun's azimuth immediately before and after the observation for time (noting the exact moments, and thus obtaining data for interpolating to the time of observation). At such stations, likewise, a careful investigation of the index errors of sextants should be made, the zero points, or index corrections of the sympiesometer should be determined by a careful comparison with the mountain barometer, (giving time for the instruments to attain the same temperature) and the difference noted in the observation books. The necessity of frequent comparisons of these instruments will be apparent, if it be considered that in the event of fracture of the barometer tube, no other means will exist by which the zero point of a new one can be determined. Occultations of stars by the moon, and, if possible, eclipses of the satellites of Jupiter, should be observed whenever an opportunity may occur. The former especially, affording the best known method of ascertaining the longitude by a single observation, should be constantly borne in mind, and the Almanack consulted several days in advance, so that no occultation of a large star, certainly identifiable, should be allowed to escape through inadvertence.

The Committee especially recommend that every observation made should be registered in a book devoted to that purpose, and preserved in the exact terms of the readings of the instruments and chronometer, and kept rigorously separate in its statement from any calculation thereon grounded; and that the observed or presumed index or zero corrections, whether of chronometer, sextant, barometer, or other instrument, should be stated separately in every case,

and on no account incorporated with observed quantities; and moreover, that the observations upon which such index errors have been concluded, should also be preserved. Since, however, the guidance of the expedition will necessitate the calculations of many observations on the spot, the result of such calculations should be entered (as such), beside the observation from which they have been concluded.

The Committee further recommend, that the chronometers with which the expedition has been provided by the liberality of his Majesty's government, should on no account be corrected by moving the hands, however great their errors may become, not even in the extreme case of one or both of them having been allowed to run down. In case of such a misfortune (which should be most carefully guarded against by making it the daily duty of more than one person to remind their bearers to wind them up at a certain hour) it will be most convenient in the place of setting them, to defer winding them until the hours and minutes come round, at which they may respectively have stopped as near as may be ascertained from one to the other, or from both, to other watches of the party; and such event, should it take place, should be conspicuously noted in the observation book. And as a further and useful precaution, it is recommended to keep some of the best going watches, belonging to individuals of the expedition, to mean Greenwich time, by frequent comparison with one of the chronometers.

In every case where time is observed, express mention should be made of the chronometer or other watch employed, designating it by the maker's name and number, so that no uncertainty may ever arise as to the proper application of the correction for error and rate.

The rates of chronometers should be examined at any station where the expedition may rest two or more consecu-

tive nights, either by equal altitudes of a star, or simply by noticing the disappearance of any large fixed star from the same exact point of view behind the edge of a board fixed at some considerable distance in the horizon, and having its edge adjusted to a vertical position by a plumb line, the interval between two such disappearances being an exact sidereal day, or 23h. 56m. 4 sec. mean time. Under the head of secondary observing stations, may be classed those in which no lunar distances can be got, and when the sights for time and meridian altitude can only be superficially and imperfectly taken, or one without the other. With the view to the connexion of these with the primary station, and to the sketching out a chart of the country passed through at every primary station, a series of angles should be taken by the sextant, between remarkable and well defined points in the horizon, dividing the horizon into convenient portions, and carrying the angles all round the circle back to the point of departure: and in the selection of such points, two ends should be kept in view, first the precise identification of the point of observation, in case of its being desirable to find it again; and secondly, the determination from it of geographical points. The first of these purposes will require angles to be taken between near, the second, between distant objects. For the latter, of course, remarkable mountain peaks will, if possible, be chosen. Of such, when once observed, the appearances from the place of observation should be projected by the camera lucida, and their changes of aspect and form, as the expedition advances, should be well and carefully noticed, to avoid mistakes. The approximate distance of any remarkable object may be had by pacing, or otherwise measuring more exactly, a base line of a few hundred paces, in a direction perpendicular to that in which it appears, erecting a staff at each end, and from each

staff measuring the angle between the object and the other staff.

In this manner the neighbourhood of any station may be mapped down so as to be available for many useful purposes. In all such cases the compass bearings of the most important object in the horizon should be taken ; and in the absence of the sextant angles, azimuth compass readings of each point may be substituted, though, of course, with less precision.

Indications of the progress of the expedition should be left at various points in its course, by making marks on rocks, or stones, &c., and by burying documents in bottles. In regard to the latter, it will be necessary to deposit them one foot deep at some known distance, say fifteen feet from a conspicuous surface of stone, on which there is painted a circle containing the distance and bearing by compass of the bottle, from its centre ; and that the situation of such places of deposit should also be ascertained by exact compass bearings of several remarkable points in the horizon, both near and distant, as well as by angles between them, carefully determined with a sextant, and noted down in the journals of the expedition for their own reference, or that of future travellers.

In surveying the basin of a river, or in proceeding along the prevailing slope of a country, it is very desirable to determine as many points as possible on the same level, and form thus, as it were, a parallel of elevation to the level of the sea. A line of this kind, traced at the altitude of, say one thousand feet, would determine in a considerable degree the physical condition of extensive spaces on the map on both sides of it. The stations of most interest will be found at the extremities of transverse arms of the ridge, or in the central and most retiring points of the intervening spaces. Let the general slope of the country on both sides

of such stations be noted as to its rate and direction; and in regard to the valleys which intersect the slope, let their width, direction, and general rate of declivity, and the section and velocity of their streams, be ascertained, and the probable course of the rivers, as far as it can be determined by the appearance of the country, and the reports of the natives, giving them the aboriginal names when they can be discovered. The altitude and acclivity of remarkable peaks or ridges should also be investigated along with the nature of their climate, and the clouds formed upon them. It will be requisite also to mark with care the nature of the winds and sky as well as the temperature at stations in the neighbourhood, and to note the influence which changes of that description have upon the barometer, and observe also the temperature of deep pools or lakes and copious springs.

The geological structure of the country is especially worthy of minute and extended observation, and will require that notes be kept of all such appearances as indicate or accompany changes of structure in the formation, or of components in the soil and surface, especially such fossil remains of plants or animals as may occur, and metallic ores, and that proper specimens accompany these notes, ticketed on the spot with precise localities.

The botanical researches of the expedition will extend to the preservation of specimens of plants not found in the Colony, and especially of transportable roots, and the seeds of all such as may be found in a ripened state, noting localities and the varieties of aspect which vegetation puts on in different situations. In regard to other branches of Natural History, as it is obvious, that after a short experience of research under your direction, almost every one will be able to recognize and preserve what is rare and novel, no further instruction need be given, excepting the general expres-

sion of desire by the Committee that all shall endeavour to secure for the expedition whatever in any department they esteem valuable; it being expressly understood that every article collected by each individual belongs in property to the subscribers to the expedition collectively.

In regard to the inhabitants themselves, it is of paramount interest to gain an exact portrait of their life, as respects their condition, arts, and policy; their language, their external appearance, population, origin, and relation to other tribes; or, in general, whatever tends to elucidate their disposition or resources as sharers or agents in commerce, or their preparation to receive Christianity.

It will be proper to ascertain their religious traditions or practices, if they have any, distinguishing what is indigenous from the glimmering apprehension of great religious truths, which necessarily spreads in advance of the scenes of Missionary labour.

Examine also the state of their intellect generally, as exemplified in their social and political arrangements and common traditions, songs, and amusements, and particularly in regard to their knowledge of nature, and their notions of its vast and varied proceedings, as thunder, rain, wind, &c.

Inquiries respecting commerce and the prospect of its extension are to be viewed as of no small importance in this undertaking. Every means must be used to ascertain its present nature, channels, and extent, and to determine the existing demand for foreign commodities, and the returns which may be expected for them. Proper inquiries may also lead to some satisfactory views of its future condition, as indicated by the wants of the native population, or the objects of most importance to improve their condition, and the corresponding resources for exchange which may arise from a more beneficial employment of their industry.



Lastly, we may notice the propriety of making inquiries or gathering information with respect to similar enterprises, as whether the natives have traditions of movements of their own, or of the arrival of strangers among them. All that can be gathered respecting Dr. Cowan's expedition will be acceptable in the highest degree. The elucidation also of an isolated effort to struggle through the difficulties of African travelling should also be kept in view; it was made by a Missionary of the name of Martin, who has not been heard of since he crossed the Colonial boundary in December, 1831. He is consequently supposed to have perished in the Gareep, or to have been destroyed on its banks, though, as it was his intention to avoid the establishments of Europeans or their lines of communications, there is still a possibility of his surviving.

The articles fitted for carrying on commerce with the natives have three distinct objects:—First, by keeping up a constant appearance of traffic, to present in their eyes an appreciable motive for this visit to their territory. Second, to conciliate favour, or to procure provisions for the purpose of husbanding the resources of the expedition. And third, for the purpose of procuring any profitable articles to carry on to the others district for the ends abovementioned, or to sell in the Colony at the termination of the enterprise. In regard to these the Committee has to remark, that attention to the two first-mentioned articles is indispensable, from its necessary connexion with the safety and efficiency of the expedition, and that the third is to be contingent on the acquisitions of the party in regard to its main object, of collecting information as to the country, and securing what illustrates its natural history and resources, and on the state of its means of transport.

The Committee, therefore, recommend that this third object be attended to only in case that it be necessary to send waggons back for supplies, or in case that in the homeward progress of the party there be room for such articles, without incommoding it in its other operations.

[Here follows a list of the members composing the Committee.]

---

It must always be remembered that such directions contemplate adaptations of a two-fold sort: they must keep in view not only the objects which are best in themselves, but those of them especially which may be most profitably executed. The end ought not only to be a useful end, and the means well fitted to reach it, but all ought also to conform to the cherished views, to the disposition, capabilities, and general preparation of those who are to effect it. The Committee have evidently executed this part of its task under that impression. Many things of a grander, perhaps, or of a more exciting character, might have been attempted: we doubt if any can be discovered more useful, or so suited to the nature of the resources and facilities we here enjoy. Any man possessing the common qualities of firmness and caution, with adequate resources, and in favourable circumstances—in none other could it be attempted, may run a race from parallel to parallel, and tell that a mountain rises to the right and a river flows to the left, and that barbarian life is of a fiery temperament under the equator, and he might display to our breathless wonder the jostling dangers of climate, privation, and hostility, in the prolific abundance natural to those regions, and leave us little wiser than

before. We have something greater than this aimed at in the instructions: of which object the comparative character is, that it occupies less space, requires more time, and offers greater advantage. For details respecting these, we refer to the instructions themselves.

While we acknowledge then that it would not have been wise to have sacrificed in this case on behalf of objects having more romantic novelty and less usefulness, the facilities presented by the peculiar character of this expedition for sounding closely the depths of nature's capabilities, and the condition of savage life in the regions it will traverse, we must not forget that mere territorial discovery of a general and extended character is more to us than merely a desirable event. Our position renders it every day more and more a *necessity* that we should measure the intensity of savage strength, and gauge the depth of barbarian resources in the untraversed regions of our continent: it is something to know the sources of trade they may afford, but it is of more value by far to know the sources of disturbance they may enclose. There are wide territories which are apparently possessed by tribes closely allied, and easily susceptible of union; their views and habits must be undergoing a rapid change; and a measure of years easily numbered may enable them to become very destructive, if such be their desire. It is thought a considerable effort, according to colonial measurement, to pursue and reduce a hundred pedestrian robbers. Could we then expect prosperity or peace to abide in our more distant provinces, if a native tribe stood in hostility against our frontier, in possession of a few hundred horses?

We may expect that Christianity, civilization, and commerce, may repress or pacify the ambitious or marauding temper of our neighbours. We trust it may be so, and that

the Christianity and civilization of our own public transactions will offer to the eye and experience of the barbarian a peace-speaking and sedative example. Our confidence rests more surely on the efforts of the Missionary, whose endeavours have become everywhere full of hope, since in these latter times Christianity has become practised as of old, in diffusing civilization. The present undertaking is of vast importance in that point of view. It goes to measure, map, and ascertain—it goes to tell what and in what way accessible may be the swarm of two millions of people, which has been guessed to be the population of the great trapezium which it is instructed to traverse. This result equally with others requires the caution and leisure in its proceedings which the Instructions enjoin. It remains to be determined whether it be adviseable to attempt any farther discovery from this point than the Expedition has now undertaken. Probably, at least, only another such process, proceeding from the boundary which it is calculated to reach, will be either wished or attempted. It will be very long indeed before we be prepared to make the limit of this second extent the starting point for a third, and we may expect that the very central regions of the continent will before then be penetrated by shorter routes from the seas on either side. We are not among those who are sanguine that these very central regions can be attained in any other way, or that this country in particular presents any special facilities which can compensate for its distance, and hence a danger of failure which is obviously to be estimated at a higher ratio than as the distance. Considering how many blank and barren parallels of latitude lie noted on our maps, between us and the Mediterranean, the mind, in anticipation that all will ultimately be discovered, may forget the necessarily-con-

tracted space of one effort. Let us, however, keep in view proper measures of what this extent presents to us. From this place to the sources of the Nile, over which the baffled curiosity of Europe yet sighs in vain, is probably as far as the direct distance of Alexander's march from Macedon to the Indus, and from us to Zumbao, in the neighbourhood of the 20th parallel, is about equal to the space from sea to sea across the whole Australian continent. The parallel of 19° includes on this side of it almost all that is absolutely beyond the limit of European knowledge and observation in this section of Africa. It will be a very great achievement indeed, if with any proper degree of attention to mapping and collecting, the resources of our Expedition, and the favourable circumstances which we trust it will meet with should enable it to traverse this space: it will be highly satisfactory if we receive a distinct account of nature and men as they occur betwixt us and the tropic of Capricorn. It will not require less than three such, each resting on the acquisitions of its predecessor to bring us useful information of the Equatorial regions.

The most promising of all for that purpose is a scheme announced by Lieutenant EMERY, in No. III. of the Journal of the Geographical Society of London. He proposed to start from Mombas, occupying nearly the apex of the great bight which presses in upon the African coast, north of the Mozambique Channel: it is therefore almost the nearest point of the coast line to the Equatorial centre of the continent. The place was lately British, and may be so still if it were thought worth accepting as a gift of its people. It is at all events overlooked if not ruled by the friendly power of our ally the Imaun of Muskat. There are the resources of a partial civilization about it, and the natives, including even the marauding Gallas, seemed to Lieutenant Emery to

be in no way hostile to the presence of a stranger among them. This last element, in the problem, is however, the most doubtful. Considering moreover the great extent of the Equatorial line as it spans from sea to sea, being greater than any one route yet realized by a European on this continent, we cannot tell how far indications at one end are responsive to realities at the other, and heavy indeed therefore would the probabilities be against the attempt to cross it there, proving different in its result from the many disastrous enterprizes which already have exhibited to us—the angel of Death as the peculiar guardian of its secrets.

It is remarkable that almost simultaneously, both here and in London, attention has been directed peculiarly to the region which our expedition proposes to explore. A pamphlet has been published by Mr. Cooley, recommending for that purpose an incursion from De la Goa Bay, and it is understood that a traveller, in some respect or other, under the sanction and patronage of the Royal Geographical Society of London, has been dispatched to make the attempt. Now the pamphlet, though presenting a compact and correct view generally of what is known in regard to the tribes and countries towards the interior, is tinged with considerable misapprehension of the condition of the place proposed as a starting point. The fluctuating circumstances of its population, and their consequent want of resources, combined with the deadly influence of its climate, the more favourable conception of which in Mr. Cooley's pamphlet is founded on very insufficient grounds, cannot fail, as far as we can judge, to render such a scheme utterly abortive, or at the best, productive of a very fruitless waste of life, and of the resources of the highly talented and prospering association which supports it. Let us remark, however, with regret, that whether it was that our proposals reached it in a time of great incon-

venience or inadvertence, or that it despaired of our success, or that its affections were pre-engaged to the procedure we have noticed above, the Royal Geographical Society has not, as far as we know, afforded to our proposals any sort of notice whatever.

Something has been done to illustrate the condition of Eastern Africa, both as to its physical and political characteristics, by the voyages of Captain Owen and the observations of Lieutenant Emery. That elucidation however is of small amount, and may be condensed into a narrow compass. In regard to the former work we have met with great disappointment. Much of it is due certainly to the nature of the outfit: there was surely a wasteful parsimony in the Government, that it sent so few competent persons to profit by one of the most splendid opportunities for the survey of a new domain of organic nature which any period has offered. A Botanist was afforded from a private society; but his lamented decease left much undone. Other branches of natural history were left unattempted, and to do in that respect what might have been well done then, will require efforts equivalent in extent and expense. The narrator of the voyage has not dabbled very successfully in these matters on the strength of his own knowledge: blunders in that respect, however, together with the multifarious gossip of the narrative, are in some respects redeemed by the important facts which it occasionally discloses, and by the minuteness and accuracy with which it may be inferred the main object of the expedition was prosecuted, in determining the varied and entangled outline of the extensive and interesting coast which it surveyed.

The facts presented to us are of the following character generally:—

1. That from beyond the Equator as far as the southern

mouth of the Mozambique Channel, the coast line is thickly planted with islands, reefs, and inlets affording harbours of the most advantageous description in regard to access, security, and convenience; being in many instances natural inlets or straits of great variety, and in other instances the effect of the diffused and unrateable influence of the coral insects. Four or five important rivers also pierce the line of the eastern coast, and the confronting outline of Madagascar presents the same contrast to our impenetrable shores in the abundance and variety of its points of access and shelter.

2. Over the whole of this section of the Indian Ocean there exist the remnants of Arabian and Portuguese influence lingering in isolated points upon the shore: the latter especially now wasting from its own atrocious and inhospitable exercise. Humanity will certainly triumph in its extinction, if it be true that the cunning of its unhonoured decrepitude has been exercised in tempting, even recently, the native tribes to mutual slaughter, from zealous vexation at more philanthropic interference. Among the natives on the coast there appears great continuity of general character, aspect, and perhaps language, but the locality of identity or variation remains yet to be ascertained, and a page in the history of man remains yet to be deciphered, containing the narration or conjecture of what has occurred during the long ages in which the presence and the power of the civilized world has been excluded from these regions as rigidly as their shores have formed a barrier to the ocean.

There is great want of a general knowledge of some good system (and there are several published) by which the sounds of one language may be represented by the characters of another. The confusion in the names of people and places in this continent is becoming somewhat puzzling. It is surely advisable to retain the spelling of names which



have already been introduced into a known book, and save us the trouble of identifying such things as Matchappees and Bachapins. Those who are curious however in regard to exactness of sounds ought to ascertain the local extraction and nurture of the writer. A scottish hand will trace sounds by different marks from those employed by an Englishman, of which there are many instances in Missionary records. An instance of inattention to the powers of a foreign alphabet occurs in No. III. of the Journal above referred to, where a chief is presented to us as reigning at Mombas under the title of Xequé, this being obviously the Portuguese version of the common Arabic title Sheik. Another source of uncertainty is presented in Captain Owen's book, where the Caffer territory is indicated as divided into provinces under titles which are obviously the names of the chiefs lately ruling them, this may perhaps account for the changes of names which in old maps are found sown thickly over the great blank of interior Africa\*.

Mr. Chase, the Honorary Secretary of the Committee for conducting the expedition, a gentleman of considerable talent and literary attainment, has drawn up a concise and able account of the progress of discovery to the north and eastward of the Cape Colony up to the period of the departure of this expedition, which was published in the South African Quarterly Journal in Cape Town; and as the circulation has been principally confined to the limits of the Colony, I shall take the liberty of laying the following interesting extracts before the reader:—

\* South African Quarterly Journal for April, 1834.

“The last public expedition dispatched from this colony, for the purpose of discovery into the vast, unknown, and interesting continent of which it forms a part, was that of Dr. Cowan and Lieutenant Donavon, in 1808, who were sent with instructions to cross to the Portuguese settlements on the eastern coast, which failed in consequence of the destruction of the party, but what were the causes which led to that disastrous event, or the precise scene in which it occurred, has never yet been satisfactorily ascertained. Since that period, nothing upon so extended a scale has been attempted, although several plans have from time to time been laid before the Colonial Government for expeditions to penetrate the interior by persons of enterprize, among whom, principally may be named the present Commissioner-General, and the late Captain Birch, of the Royal African Corps. After the lapse of a quarter of a century, public attention has been once more awakened within the Colony to this subject, rendered more important than at the time of that fatal experiment, from the mass of information which has since been acquired, especially during the last thirteen years, and from its important results in the establishment of a highly lucrative and increasing traffic with the neighbouring savages, both beyond the northern and eastern frontiers, with whom an amicable and mutually-advantageous intercourse has been arranged, as well as from the settlement of numerous Missionary institutions, even at remote places among them, charged with the promulgation of our common faith.

I shall now proceed to show the amount of information we have gained respecting the interior, in order to fix the exact state of our knowledge previous to the departure of the intended expedition under Dr. Smith, and in attempting this in order to give greater precision, and to avoid that

confusion inseparable to following a mere chronological detail of events, especially when they become numerous, and their points are widely separated, by which I should be obliged to revert from one remote scene of enterprise to another, and thereby break their relative connexion, and destroy much of what I trust will be interesting in this abstract. I shall first track up the steps of our travellers and traders beyond the *northern* limits of the colony, and then follow the clue of those who have proceeded eastwardly through the long unknown countries which skirt the shore of the Indian Ocean.

The ease with which the expedition under Messrs. Trüter and Somerville, in 1801, had entered the hitherto-closed regions, so distant from the colony, the treatment they had experienced at the hands of the Beuchuanas, a peculiarly mild race, and the excitement caused by the discovery of this amiable, courteous, and much-civilized people, induced Lord Caledon, the Governor of Cape Colony in 1808, to fit out a new expedition to follow up the interesting train of discovery so unexpectedly fallen upon, and Dr. Cowan and Lieutenant Donavon, along with a cortége of four waggons and suite composed of fifteen Hottentots, one colonist, and two soldiers, with every necessary, and an abundance of superfluities, were dispatched at an expense of Rds., 16,409, or above 2705*l.* sterling, with instructions to cross the continent as far as the Portuguese settlement of Mosambique or Sofala. The last tidings heard of them, were contained in a letter from Dr. Cowan, dated at the residence of a native Chief named Makkrakka, in about 24° south latitude, as stated by him, but which position has since been found to be erroneous, as the sources of the Moloppo, which in Cowan's dispatch is said to water that Chief's dominions, lie southward of the 25th parallel.

In an account brought into the Colony by the Missionary Campbell, from the Griquas, or Bastards of Klaarwater, or Griqua Town, in 1812, it was stated that they were murdered by Makkaba, the Chief of the Bawanket's tribe, at his capital of Melita in lat.  $24^{\circ} 45'$ , and long.  $26^{\circ} 15'$ , but this report has subsequently been traced to originate in the representations of one of that Chieftain's sons who, having revolted from his father, tried to induce the Griquas (whom he thought the natural avengers of white men) to assist him in his treason; and his falsehood was fully detected from the circumstance of his having specified a particular part of the Moloppo into which the waggons and other articles he stated had been thrown, in order to avoid discovery. For upon a careful search made shortly afterwards, nothing of the kind could be found. From a close examination of Makkaba himself, who was visited by the Missionary, Mr. Moffatt (a man of great shrewdness and tact, and well acquainted with the native language,) in 1824, just previous to the destruction of this Chief by the Mantatee hordes of invaders, and the concurrent evidence of the neighbouring tribes, the party, it would appear, were well received, and most kindly treated by the Bawankets; and having found the stock of sheep they carried with them for food troublesome, they exchanged them with Makkaba for cattle, and it was the possession of this flock by the supposed murderer, which naturally strengthened the suspicion caused by his son's testimony. In corroboration of the innocence of the Bawankets and their Chief, it may at once be stated, that a party of traders in 1826, who visited Sibigo, the successor of Makkaba at his kraal, or village of Siloqualalie, in about lat.  $25^{\circ}$ , and long.  $26^{\circ} 10'$ , found indubitable evidence of the expedition having passed safely through Melita, where they left some looking-glasses, in exchange for ivory (mutual presents); and they traced them

through Litabaruba, a town of the adjoining tribe, that of the Baquina, within forty miles of the Tropic. Sibigo's people averred that they heard of the unfortunate travellers for five or six days after they left them, and that when coming to a Bastard nation (probably a mixed race of Portuguese, and natives), they had turned towards the sea or eastward. At Siloqualalie, these traders found a singular memorial of the visit of the expedition in possession of Sibigo, and which no bribe or price could induce him to part with. The carved representation of a man on horse-back, of European contour, and dressed in a hat, trousers, and jacket, which was stated to be that of one of this fated party. There is every reason, from all we have learned, to believe that they were dispersed, and several lost their lives somewhere at the back of Inhamban, to which part of the coast, upon their turning to the eastward, five or six days north of Melita, according to the Bawankets' account, that route would bring them. In consequence of the long absence of intelligence from these travellers, Lord Caledon sent a vessel to Sofala, where it collected that the party had been cut off in the kingdom of Zaire, and only two persons escaped; and the Portuguese Governor of Mosambique having sent some trusty Negroes up the country, received similar information. From some subsequent information communicated by Captain Vidal, commanding one of the discovery ships on the eastern coast in the year 1824, and which is borne out by the testimony of Mr. H. Fynn, long a resident at Port Natal, a Hottentot man and woman arrived early in 1810 at the Portuguese settlement of De la Goa, who stated themselves to belong to an expedition from the Colony, at which Portuguese station they died, under strong suspicion of poison, and, as has been rumoured,

because they were the depositaries of a knowledge of the route from the Cape to the Portuguese settlement: a circumstance not altogether unlikely, from the known jealousy of the Portuguese, of the existence of which feeling, I believe I can give no better proof than that of the suppression of the papers of Commodore Owen, employed by the British government to survey the eastern coast, and which were prepared for the press, but have been held back in consequence, it is said, of the strong protest of the Portuguese ambassador.

A very interesting document has just been placed in my hands for publication, by Mr. H. Fynn, to whom I have already alluded, of 'A Ten Years' Residence in Port Natal,' in which I find the curious circumstance mentioned of the arrival in the neighbourhood of that place of a European on horseback, who was endeavouring to reach the sea. This took place previous to the reign of the late celebrated Chieftain of the Zulo nation, Chaka, about the year 1810, and upon whose success in regaining his country and authority, the appearance of this strange visitant had a marked influence. 'He came,' say the natives, who treasure up the memory of this apparition, 'from the westward, having passed through numerous tribes, inspiring much terror from his extraordinary figure, his hat was conceived to be part of his head, which he had the faculty of removing at pleasure, from his shoes covering his toes, and his footsteps leaving no impression of them, he was supposed to be devoid of these appendages; the singular weapon with which he was armed (a gun) vomiting out fire, smoke, and thunder, and the creature on which he was mounted (a horse), an animal never before seen, caused an additional dread. And he was generally shunned by the natives as a being not of this earth. Some kraals killed cattle on his approach as a peace-offer-

ing, and retired, leaving him to consume the sacrifice, and on returning to them, they state they found beads and other trinkets: others honoured him as a wizard, or a creature armed with celestial powers. At the Omtogala or Fisher's River, having attended Chaka's predecessor, Tingeswaio, thus far, the stranger proceeded towards the sea, when entering the Quabie tribes to the westward, he was murdered by order of its chief, Pagatwaio, who conceived him to be some unnatural animal.' The tradition of the visit of this individual, of whom little more of a determinate nature, beyond what has been related could be collected, is constantly referred to by the Natalese, and the following song made by the Quabies upon Tingeswaio, who took the traveller for some distance in his train, and whose conquest, it is said, was assisted by the alarm of this awe-inspiring auxiliary, is still sung upon festivals: the first words are intended to imitate the clatter of a horse's hoof.

'Ite, cata cata, wa mooka,  
 Wa mooka, nozy  
 Wa mooka,  
 Na injomarne.'

which is literally translated,

Clatter, clatter, he is going,  
 He goes with them,  
 He is going:  
 He goes with (a horse or) speed.

The time, the equipment, the anxiety of the stranger to reach the ocean shore, render it very probable that this might be one of the survivors of the expedition of 1808; and if the circumstance of this person's having performed an operation, which is also related of him, on native testimony, upon the knee of a native chief named Punjarn, be correct, it is

not improbable that Dr. Cowan himself might have been the victim thus ruthlessly hunted down as a monster. Dr. John Campbell, the Missionary, follows as the next traveller in a northern direction. His journey was performed in 1812, as far as Litakou, now in consequence of intestine troubles removed sixty miles beyond its former site. His route to that place was precisely the same as his predecessors ; but on his return he came down a northern branch of the Orange River, or Gareep, which he calls the Malalareen, now more known as the Hart River, a favourite, and the chief residence of the Corana and Hottentot tribes. This stream eighty miles long is said to rise from a considerable lake, in which hippopotami are most abundant, in about latitude  $29^{\circ}$ , and longitude  $25^{\circ} 26'$ . Dr. Campbell was also the first to visit the junction of that river with the Ky-Gareep, as well as the confluence of the Maap, Modder, or Muddy River ; another branch from the southward named by him the Alexander, and the Vaal Yellow, or Nu-Gareep, called by him the Cradock, with the principal stream the Gareep itself, the Great River, *par excellence*, according to the native designation, and the Orange River of Colonel Gordon ; this main stream he traced along to the Missionary Institution of Pella, about half a degree from the coast, a desert route of four hundred miles, never before visited, but devoid of anything like interest, especially to an unscientific traveller. Burchell, an indefatigable, able, and generally-accomplished genius, visited the same country, at the same period as the last-mentioned gentleman, and made great acquisitions in various branches of natural history, in a region he considers entirely new. His intention was to have penetrated to Benguela or Loanedo, St. Paul, on the western coast, but the alarms and refusal of his people prevented the execution of this bold and extensive plan of exploration. On his arrival



val at Klaarwater or Griqua Town, in lat.  $28^{\circ} 50'$  and long.  $24^{\circ} 10'$ , the principal seat of the Bastard or mixed race, finding his suite too small to carry on his journey, and obstacles being placed in the way of his attempt to induce the Griquas to join him by the resident Missionaries, he conceived the idea of returning to the Colony to procure fresh assistants through an entirely new route, that from Klaarwater to the village of Graaff-Reinet, which had never been trodden by white feet. This, from the most narrow policy of the Missionaries, who dreaded the effects of a nearer connexion with the Colony on the morals of their flock, and the possibility of the Colonists possessing themselves of the wild country in which the Griquas had themselves intruded, was represented by them as impossible, from the ferocious character of the inhabitants, and the mountainous nature of the intervening space. But undaunted by these unfavourable reports, Burchell set out, and succeeded with comparative ease in connecting that part of the interior with the Colony by a nearly direct route, and a regular post-road has consequently been established to the Griqua and Bechuana people, in this direction, to the exclusion of the old line through the Karroo, and by the Sak River. In his way to Graaff Reinet, he discovered a river, called by him the New, but now denominated the Brakke; passed through several kraals of Bushmen, whom he found friendly disposed, and much interesting country, and he arrived at Graaff Reinet in about thirty days. This place and the whole surrounding country was thrown into a state of most extraordinary alarm at his approach from such a direction, and the most exaggerated stories became current among the simple farmers of this wild frontier. Reports of the approach of a white officer at the head of a force of several hundreds of

Bastards, a French army, and numerous other absurdities, were propagated, and as readily believed, and they infused the more fright, from the circumstance of the greater part of the male population being absent on the great Commando or military expedition to drive the Caffers out of the Zunreveldt on the south-eastern part of the Colony, and two hundred miles from the scene of the exploit of this peaceable visitant. Having reinforced his party, he returned to Griqua Town by a new course, a little more to the eastward of his former route, along the Zekoe River, and the New Gareep or Black River, and by which he visited the remarkable passage of the stream named by him the Narrows, where that magnificent river is at once straitened by rocky promontories to a width of a few yards, through which it foams impatient of the unaccustomed obstruction, and bounds from it with a fury and grandeur, the splendid and terrific scene of which requires to be seen to be adequately appreciated. The importance of this hazardous exploration of Burchell is evident from the fact, that the remotest Boor's or farmer's residence behind Graaff Reinet was then at the Grootte Tafelberg, only seventy miles beyond it, and that now the whole country to the Great River itself is occupied by them. From Klaarwater or Griqua Town, Burchell set out on his journey to the interior, visiting the beautiful source of the Kuruman, which leaps at once from its rocky fount a perfect river. The city of Litakun or Litakou, of which and its inhabitants, whose manners and habits are a perfect type of the race inhabiting the interior, to that yet to be discovered, and probably remote line, which separates them from the negroes, he has given by far the best and most complete account yet penned. The Moshowa River, a stream joining the Kuruman, and afterwards along with

the latter reaching the Orange or Gareep; and he terminated his researches at the Chu Lake, laid down by him in latitude  $27^{\circ} 15'$  and longitude  $24^{\circ}$ , where his people refused to proceed farther. A ridge of mountains, originating in a low chain of sand-stone hills at Klaarwater, and attaining a considerable elevation at the Kuruman, under the name of Kamhunni, whose highest peak just above Litakou, I should rudely estimate at about 1500 feet, runs in a direct northerly range to the Chue Lake, where it is called by eminence, among the natives, Maadje, or the Mountain, has been supposed by some geographers to be the commencement of the Lapata range, but which, by recent observers, has been found to be incorrect, for after proceeding to a short distance beyond the lake, they suddenly fall off and entirely disappear. The length of this chain including the subsidiary hills, out of which it appears to grow, may be estimated at two hundred miles. From Klaarwater to his extreme point of observation, the hills, mountains, and rocks Burchell states to be composed of sand-stone incumbent upon a vast even and underanged bed of limestone, which he considers primitive.

The route of this intelligent traveller, beyond his predecessors, covers a space of nearly one degree of latitude and longitude. His geographical observations have given considerable precision to our knowledge of the interior, by determining the exact situation of certain points, and his geological remarks have thrown much light on the physical constitution of the trans-Gareepine regions. But the brightest laurels in the wreath awarded him by public opinion are those for his contributions to natural history. Dr. Campbell revisited the scene of his former labours in 1819. Without any pretensions to science (unfortunately), but

seconded by the goodwill of the Missionaries resident at Klaarwater, and their influence on the natives at the principal Stations, he was enabled to reach a part nearly two degrees of latitude in advance of his predecessors, and for a period of some years enjoyed the credit of being the most successful of the African travellers, whom he threw far behind him. Leaving old Litakou in latitude  $27^{\circ} 10'$  and longitude  $25^{\circ}$  on the 15th of April, 1820, he took a north-east direction, and after an agreeable and safe journey of nineteen days reached Chuan or Kurreechane\* (as it is called by him), in about latitude  $24^{\circ} 30'$ , and longitude  $28^{\circ}$ , the capital of the Bamorutze tribe of Bechuana, passing through the Battamachas, an intervening clan of the same great race. The habits of these people are so much alike, their language so similar, and have been so well described by Burchell, that it would be superfluous to repeat here what the traveller has recorded of them; it however appears that the Bamorutzi are more advanced in civilization than their southern neighbours, a remark which there is reason to believe applies in an increasing degree to the various tribes of this widely-dispersed people, the farther they extend to the northward. Kurreechane, at the time of his visit, consisted of sixteen thousand inhabitants, who carried on a considerable trade with the adjacent nations, and were particularly expert in the manipulation of metals, in which their country abounds. The stream seen by Campbell in the vicinity of this place for some days previous to reaching it, took an easterly course, appearing to be the source of considerable waters, which, according to native testimony, ran to the Indian Ocean. The country is very

\* Kurrichaine of the Map.—ED.

mountainous, especially on the north, and it is evident, from this traveller's observation, he was treading a very elevated region. Rain was abundant, this being the winter season, and great cold was experienced. The route travelled in many places was very sandy, and sometimes well covered with forests of mimosas, traversed by fine rivulets, which became much more frequent as he neared the limits of his excursion. He passed several pools and lakes; some were brackish, and one called the Choo-y-my-Mirrebooh, in latitude  $25^{\circ} 50'$ , longitude  $25^{\circ} 50'$ , five miles in circumference, perfectly saline, probably lying over a bed of rock salt, the most likely cause of the numerous saltpans of the colony, and others of the interior, situated several hundreds of miles from the coast.

On his way to Kurreechane, and in about lat.  $25^{\circ} 45'$ , and long.  $26^{\circ} 15'$ , he visited Mashow, the capital of the Battamachas, then having a population of twelve thousand souls, and like the other Bechuana towns surrounded by extensive fields of Guinea corn; and a little in advance of the place fell in with ruins of some stone kraals, indicating the position of a former race superior to the present Bechuanas, who are not accustomed to build with such substantial materials. About forty miles beyond the city of Mashow he crossed the Moloppo, a fine river (mentioned but not seen by Burchell): near its source it was thirty feet wide, and two feet deep. This stream is known to join the Kuruman, after a long run, and with it in rainy seasons to reach the Gareep. Dr. Campbell represents the country as being in many places covered with a rocky pavement, in the interstices of which grass grows with great luxuriance; and the hills being formed of sand-stone, from which it appears to be similar in its geological characters to that described by

Burchell, the pavement being composed of primitive limestone, scantily covered with a very thin crust of vegetable mould. On his return to Kuruman, or new Litakou, he made a detour upon the borders of a desert, called by the natives Kalighanny, supposed to extend from the banks of the Gareep to the 10th degree of south latitude, and from about thirty miles east of the Kamhanni range of Mountains, to the country of the Damaras. A chain of wells deeply situated in lime-stone, from which water is obliged to be laded for the use of the cattle, or marshy oases, are reported to exist across this southern Zaharra; and traditions are extant among the Bechuanas, of their having made predatory excursions to tribes situated both to the north and eastward, and having in one instance attacked a nation denominated by them Mampoor, on the northern edge, where they came to a great water, when the inhabitants saved themselves by retiring to an island. Water melons are stated to be most abundant all over this desert range; and the rains are said to fall there when the days are longest. In the year 1824, the excellent and zealous Missionary at the Kuruman station, the Rev. Mr. Moffat, visited at Melita, the capital of the chief of the Bawanketz tribe, the celebrated and much-dreaded Makkabba, whom the commercial jealousy of the surrounding clans had represented as a monster of cruelty, a character which upon acquaintance proved to be totally false. It is to be regretted that the itineraries and observations of this missionary have not been laid before the public, as from his perfect knowledge of the language, his frequent journeys into the interior, and his known shrewdness and ability, he must be in possession of a rich store of information; but there appears to be a decided aversion on the part of the various Missionary So-

cities to publish the knowledge gained by their respective agents, who possess such superior opportunities of acquirement. The avidity, however, with which "Ellis's Polynesian Researches" have been received, it is to be hoped will induce others of this most devoted and praiseworthy class of men to step forward and gratify public curiosity, which cannot fail to add largely to the list of supporters to the Missionary cause—the cause of our common faith, which we are enjoined to extend.

In the same year Mr. George Thompson visited Litakou and the neighbouring districts, but the approach of the devastating Mantatees, then on their road to the Batlapees, arrested his progress, and his discoveries were confined chiefly to some new points on the banks of the Gareep.

As far back as the year 1818, an experiment was made by the Colonial Government to open a trading intercourse with the Griqua and Corana tribes by the establishment of a fair at the village of Beaufort, on the borders of the Karroo, but which from several causes fell into disuse. In 1825 facilities were afforded therefore to the colonists to proceed for the same purpose, beyond the limits of the colony to the kraals of the natives; and numerous parties soon took advantage of this permission, several of them opening up new routes, until a wide and intimate knowledge has been gained of the regions to the northward. Of the most important of these I shall now give a rapid sketch.

In 1826, Messrs. Bain and Biddulph, (the former\* having been the first to take advantage of the government

\* With Mr. B. Kift, who is to accompany the new expedition as Superintendent of its Trading Department.

proclamation for opening the trade, and who visited the country in 1825,) having reached the Chue Lake or Honing Vley, the extreme point of Burchell, where I shall therefore take them up, started thence in a north-east direction about eighty miles to the westward of Campbell's route, and succeeded in gaining a town of the Baquana tribe of Bechannas, called Letabaruba, within about forty miles of the tropic of Capricorn, and about long.  $26^{\circ} 30'$ , penetrating a country from the before-named lake, the great haunt of wild animals, and of the stately giraffe, covered with a lofty but scattered bush supplied with small springs, where numerous Bechanna outposts were established, they crossed the river Moloppo, discovered by Campbell in about lat.  $25^{\circ} 40'$ , and long.  $24^{\circ} 50'$ , one hundred and twenty miles below the point where he passed the stream. From this they proceeded to a river supplied by scanty springs called the Loololani, lat.  $25^{\circ} 15'$ , long.  $25^{\circ} 25'$ , through a track abounding with game, especially the white rhinoceros, an animal almost unknown to naturalists. From this point he proceeded to Siloqualalie, in about lat.  $25^{\circ}$ , and long.  $26^{\circ} 10'$ , the new capital of the Bawankets, Melita, its former city, having been destroyed, and its sovereign Makkabba killed by the Mantatees, as already related. Between the Loololani River, and the town of Siloqualalie, a distance of fifty miles, were fine open plains, diversified by low conical hills, the soil a deep red sand, the springs weak, and situated in a deep calcareous soil. At Silolqualalie the traders were well received by Sibegho, the successor of Makkabba, who invited them to assist him in dislodging a party of the Mantatees, who had entrenched themselves at Letabarabu, a principal town of the next tribe, that of the Baquina, which had been overrun and dispersed by the invaders.



The small number of the trading party, and the conduct of the Bawankets, forced their consent, and they proceeded with a large body of native warriors on a most interesting journey, which afforded full scope to observe their method of waging war, and their mode of supplying their commissariat, to the last-mentioned place, fifty miles in advance, where they drove out the marauders, who were panic-struck at the sound of guns. The country passed to this place is very woody, water plentiful, but no running streams were seen; it is apparently very elevated, and doubtless forms a part of the separating ridge or central plateau, dividing the eastern and western waters. On the east, at a trifling distance, a range of lofty mountains stretches in a diagonal line from north-west to south-east, named by the natives Le Roopa, and reported to be very rich in iron and copper: this divides the Baquin and Bawankets from the Bamorutzi nations; the range may be represented on the map as commencing in lat.  $23^{\circ} 40'$ , and long.  $26^{\circ} 30'$ , and proceeding to lat.  $24^{\circ} 50'$ , and long.  $27^{\circ} 20'$ , their farther extent being unknown. A somewhat lower ridge rises on the western side, and the river, upon the head of which Litabaruba is situated, flows towards the north-east. The language, manners, and habits of the people are the same as the other Bechuannas. The next journey of importance in these regions was that of Messrs. Scoon and M·Luckie. This trading party, leaving the Missionary Station at Bootschnap, situated on the Hart River, near the confines of the country, seized from the natives by the mixed race of Griquas, and now denominated, by courtesy, Griqua Land, in about lat.  $27^{\circ} 50'$ , and long.  $25^{\circ} 5'$ , commenced a route in the same direction as that of Mr. Campbell in 1820, frequently intersecting, and verifying many of the points laid down by that individual.

In about lat.  $24^{\circ} 50'$ , and long.  $27^{\circ} 40'$ , somewhere below the Philip's Fountain of Campbell, the party took a direct easterly route, and after proceeding about forty miles, discovered a large river, called by the natives Moriqua; at the ford or drift they crossed it was very deep, and forty yards wide. This stream, which they traced nearly up to its source, and for fifty miles down towards its estuary, rises in the south, between the 25th and 26th degree of latitude, 29th and 30th longitude, first takes a north-west course to the ford just mentioned, and then sweeps to the north-east, and passes through a large opening in an elevated range of mountains running nearly due west and east under the tropic. The natives stated their ignorance of the country beyond these mountains, but they understood it was inhabited by men with long hair, robbers by profession, and of the most ferocious disposition. The banks of the river are well timbered, but infested with alligators of a large size. From the ford, the traders drove on eastward along and close to a range of mountains on their right hand, or south, rich in metallic ores, where were abundant remains of Bechuanna villages (the natives having been destroyed by the Mantatee tribes), and traces of recently wrought iron-mines. The country was most fertile in appearance, luxuriant in pasturage, well wooded, and watered by frequent streams rising in the mountains, and joining, it was imagined, the Moriqua, which not unlikely falls into the Indian Ocean on the coast of Inhamban. Geographical accuracy is not to be expected from mere traders, but this party having been conducted by an educated individual, of great good sense, and capability of observation, much faith may be placed upon his journal, written with great care and precision of detail. Somewhere about lat.  $24^{\circ} 50'$ , and longitude  $29^{\circ} 40'$ , they crossed another considerable river.

running direct north, called the Waritcie, and they then turned immediately to the southward over a large plain, in which, just within the eastern verge of the horizon, could be seen two or three peaks of far-distant mountains. At the extreme point of this journey, which may be placed somewhere about lat.  $26^{\circ} 30'$ , and long.  $30^{\circ} 5'$ , they fell in with a Zoola Chief, named Matsellikats \*, or Omsediggas, who had established himself there, having been driven over the great coastwise ridge of mountains by Chaka, the late sovereign of Nataal, and who was imitating the example of his victor, by reducing in his turn to his despotic sway those inoffensive and half-civilized tribes upon whose territories he had been forced. Kurrechane, or properly, Chuan, the town of Baboons †, so named by the natives from the number of those animals in the mountains surrounding that place, has been frequently visited by these traders: it was, however, in ruins, having been overrun by the Mantatees in their road towards the Colony in 1824. The inhabitants had removed twenty miles from the original site to the north-west, and their new city, under the same appellation, contained only two thousand instead of sixteen thousand souls, as in the time of Campbell. The neighbouring country is described as very mountainous, highly beautiful, and exceedingly fertile. After the unexpected discovery made by these traders of a Zoola Chieftain (Omsediggas) on the northward of the elevated mountain range which skirts the eastern coast, Mr. Moffat, the Missionary, proceeded from Kuruman to the new kraal of this interloper, by almost a direct easterly course, by taking of which he was the first to trace up one of the main branches of the Gareep, or Orange River, to its source, that marked in the maps as the Zwarte

\* Matacatzée of the Map.—ED.

† First visited by Mr. Campbell in 1819.

**Bushman's River.** Having gradually ascended to this point, he found himself on a considerable ridge, from which the slope was rapid and abrupt, and descending this elevated region, (a continuation of the hills seen by Scoon and M'Luckie on their right hand, when they turned south towards the kraal of Omsediggas,) he proceeded to the village of the Zoola Chief, situated near a deep and rapid stream, called by him the Elephant's River, which is placed nearly in lat.  $26^{\circ} 30'$ , and long.  $30^{\circ} 20'$ . It is probable that this stream runs into Delagoa Bay, or some of the rivers which empty themselves there. The memoranda made by Messrs. Hume and Millan, (whose observations render it certain they had entered the tropical regions,) not having yet come to hand, I am unable to give even an outline of their journey, in which they state they have discovered two fine rivers. In looking over the latest maps of the southern peninsula, a wide extent of country, it will be seen, is laid down along the western coast to the north of the Orange River, or Gareep, which is occupied by the Namacqua and Damara tribes: of this, however, but little is satisfactorily known, and it is represented by the few travellers who had visited it as very sandy, arid and barren, and but slightly populated: a large stream here figures on the charts, formerly called the Fish River, but since the Borradaile, which intersects, or rather drains, the country, watering it most probably only in the rainy season. It falls into the Gareep, at a small distance from its mouth.

Before closing this part of the abstract of our information regarding the countries to the northward, and proceeding to the discoveries along the eastern coast, it may not be altogether uninteresting to describe the progress made upon the western shores of the Peninsula, towards the Portuguese

settlement of Benguela, and which we are enabled to do from the report of the survey of Captain Chapman of his Majesty's sloop *Espeigle*, prosecuted by the orders of Commodore Nourse, in 1824.

The singular anomaly on the charts of this part of the African continent must be familiar to every reader, I mean that a line of coast should be protracted, on which the sweeping remark is placed, "No fresh water from Fish Bay to St. Helena Bay," that is for a distance of above one thousand miles; while at the same time, within these two positions, the sites of several native villages are laid down. Upon what sort of beverage their inhabitants depend, the sagacious map-framers have not at the same time condescended to inform us, whether from the dews of heaven, from distilled sea-water, or whether, from some peculiar physical constitution, they needed not liquid food: they must, however, be a singular race of men, probably akin to those other monsters, imagined to be denizens of Africa, always offering something new, "whose heads do grow beneath their shoulders." The probability of this record has long been suspected, and from the great currents observed by numerous navigators, which set out from the shores, the existence of rivers of no small magnitude has been supposed. Captain Chapman in some measure verified these suspicions by discovering, thirteen miles to the north of Augra, Ilheos, or Walvisch Bay, in latitude  $25^{\circ} 53'$ , a fine river named by him the Somerset, with good water, sufficient for the supply of shipping; and in lat.  $17^{\circ} 10'$  another, which he called the Nourse, with a copious discharge, over the bar of which he brought the ship's pinnace laden with water, and drawing four feet. The appearance of natives and wild animals, observed by this expedition at various parts of the coast, is proof sufficient of the existence of this necessary fluid. The

following positions are either visited or discovered by this survey :

Elizabeth Bay, in lat.  $27^{\circ}$ .

Angra Peguena, in lat.  $26^{\circ} 40'$ , where one of B. Diaz's columns, dated 1486, was found entire.

Spencer Bay, lat.  $25^{\circ} 47'$ , a spacious inlet, and well sheltered.

Walvisch Bay, lat.  $22^{\circ} 53'$ .

Somerset River.

Nourse River, in lat.  $17^{\circ} 10'$ .

Fish Bay, spacious, good soundings, deep water, perfectly safe from all winds and swell.

Port Alexander, lat.  $15^{\circ} 50'$ , good anchorage, deep water, perfectly safe from winds and seas : at its north cape, called Cape Negro, another pillar of Diaz was found.

Little Fish Bay, long.  $15^{\circ} 8'$ , extensive ; a fine river falls into it.

Bottomless Pit, long.  $13^{\circ} 15'$ , a remarkable inlet ; no soundings but at its head, and then in forty-five fathoms.

St. Mary's Bay, lat.  $13^{\circ} 27'$ , well sheltered ;—a Portuguese pillar.

Elephant's Bay, lat.  $13^{\circ} 13'$ , plenty of water.

Victoria River, lat.  $14^{\circ} 15'$ , a fine river, fresh water close to the bar, natives seen, but who did not speak the language of Benguela, although within a trivial distance of that place.

---

#### EASTERN INTERIOR.

As far back as the year 1683, a party of wrecked sailors are reported to have reached the Cape from Port Natal ; an extraordinary occurrence, if we take into account the distance from the Colony, at that time not extending far

beyond the present Cape district, and the interval populated by aggravated, hostile, and unknown tribes.

The Caffers were accidentally discovered by a party of Boors on a hunting expedition in 1684, and four years later, the inhabitants of Natal were visited by the celebrated Captain Woodes Rogers, whose name is immortally blended with that delightful and dangerously seductive, half-fact, and half-romantic tale which "hath made many sailors," "The History of Robinson Crusoe," whose prototype, Alexander Selkirk, Rogers had rescued at the Island of Juan Fernandez from an unknown grave, and a solitude, of which the genius of Defoe has almost made an envied Paradise. Who amongst us, calling back the recollections of our boyish days, cannot remember wishing to be the hero, or even the humble Friday of that exquisite story?

In 1719, Captain Gerbrantz Van der Shelling is said, upon the authority of the generally accurate Kolben, to have reached the Cape from Delagoa Bay, where he had lost his ship; and in 1727 a Lieutenant Monas is recorded to have visited Natal from the last-named settlement.

Lieutenant Patterson, the friend of the discoverer of the Orange River, Colonel Gordon, in 1779, made the Colonists acquainted with the country occupied by the advanced posts of the Caffers, then rapidly encroaching on the Hottentot nations, who, pressed upon from the east by those invaders, and on the west by the Whites, was destined soon after to relinquish their existence as an independent community.

In 1783, a few sailors from the memorable wreck of the East India vessel, the "Grosvenor," effected their escape from the Omsemceeaba rivers, above one thousand miles by land from Cape Town, and in consequence of their representations, the sources of the Kei River were explored

during the same year, by a party sent out to rescue the remainder of the survivors from that tremendous catastrophe\*.

In 1790, the Colonist, William Van Reenen, a man of undaunted spirit, great curiosity, and determined courage, whose frequent travels into the interior, and discoveries, have never been duly appreciated, nor adequately rewarded, by his philanthropic expedition in this year, in search of the survivors of the wrecked crew and passengers of the ship just named, added in extent more largely than any preceding traveller to our knowledge of the countries to the eastward; and his interesting journal, published by Captain Riou in 1792, gave a tolerably correct, although slight insight, into the geography of regions already traversed, but hitherto undescribed: his journey extended as far as the scene of the wreck, three hundred miles beyond the then Colonial boundary. Benjamin Stout, Captain of the American ship the "Hercules," who lost his vessel near the river Beka, in 1795, pretended to give a description of the country through which himself, passengers, and crew safely proceeded to the Cape; and in 1797, Mr. Barrow visited the Keisikamma River, from its source to the mouth, and furnished some very interesting information of the Amokosa nation, with whom he passed some time.

In 1801, the residence of that extraordinary man, Dr. Van der Kemp, in Caffraria, gave him an excellent opportunity of observing the manners of its inhabitants, and of acquiring geographical information, of which to some extent he availed himself; and Professor Lichtenstein, two years later, contributed considerable and valuable stores to our previous knowledge of this part of the globe.

\* Some further particulars relative to this distressing event will be found in the Appendix.



The internal quarrels of the Caffers, and their aggressions upon the Colonists of the border, which had begun to assume a very serious aspect, as far back as the year 1798, torced the Colonial Government, in 1811, to resort to the determined and vigorous measure of driving the intruding part of the savage population, which had fixed itself eastward of the Great Fish River, across that long acknowledged boundary, from which time, up to 1819, a continual scene of warfare ensued, and ended only in an invasion from the Colony during the latter year, when the troops and burghers penetrated as far as the Kei River; and a pretty accurate idea of the country and of its capabilities, as far as that stream, was then formed, by a survey made at the instance of government.

A fresh, and by far the most important, impulse was now given to discovery in this quarter, by the settlement of the British emigrants, in 1820, in the district of Albany, upon the immediate borders of Caffraria, whose continued failures for several years in their agricultural pursuits drove them into trading intercourse with their barbarous neighbours. The policy of the Dutch government, which was persevered in by their successors, the British, from their conquest of the Colony up to this period, was to prevent all connexion between the Colonists and Caffers, and DEATH was the penalty held out *in terrorem* for passing over the proclaimed boundary, or being detected in trafficking. The urgent calls of an imperious necessity, the fear of actual starvation on the one side, and the promise of a lucrative trade on the other, however, broke through the absurd and impolitic restraint, and an extensive but illicit commerce was soon established. After several ineffectual attempts on the part of the Colonial Government to maintain their antiquated system, they were obliged, in 1824, finally to give way, first

authorizing a fair at one of their border forts on the Keiskamma, and subsequently, in 1830, allowing the traders to wander as they listed through the Caffer country, by which permission the whole territory from the eastern frontier to Delagoa Bay has now been traversed and described, and a number of traders have settled themselves in the Caffer country as permanent residents, whose example must lead to the civilization of the natives. This trade, at first despised, has already brought into the British settlement above 200,000*l.*, and its annual value (which has progressed from year to year) is now stated as worth 34,000*l.* sterling.

In May, 1824, a party under Lieutenant Farewell, subsequently joined by Lieutenant King, both officers of the Royal Navy, settled themselves at Port Natal, for the purpose of trade, and although that enterprise has not realized the expectations with which its originators set out, chiefly owing to a want of subordination and concert in the persons composing it, (precautions of the first importance to be attended to in a savage country by a company of adventurers, distantly removed from, and destitute of the support of a recognised government;) it has still been of great service in extending the opportunity of our inquiries into the state of the surrounding territory. Major Dundas, of the Royal Artillery, and Civil Commissioner of the Albany District, with a party of Colonial youth, sons of the British settlers, volunteers for the occasion, were despatched in 1828, to reconnoitre the forces of the Zulo Chief Chaka, then supposed to be advancing upon the Colony, with the intent to subdue and exterminate all the intervening nations. This party penetrated nearly as far as the Omzemboubo, or St. John's River, having, on their return, fallen in with, and beaten, a party of marauders, mistaken for the van of the Zuloes; and in the same year, Colonel Somerset, the active and most efficient

commander of the frontier, than whom no person is so well fitted by a knowledge of its localities and of the habits of the barbarians for that important post, proceeded with a considerable body of troops to the sources of the Om-tata River, the scene of Major Dundas's late affair, from which he dislodged the residue of that very formidable predatory band, since ascertained to have been that of Mantuanas, a Chief driven out of the eastward by Chaka, and following up the system of conquest and robbery which the oppressor had so successfully taught him to pursue. The routes taken up by these two separate expeditions, the first near the coast, and the latter far inland, and both above two hundred and fifty miles from the Colony, have added much to our local information of the interior.

The unfortunate travellers, Messrs. Cowie and Green, (the particulars of whose journey have already appeared) visited the Portuguese settlement of Delagoa overland from the Colony, in 1829; and two years previously that well-known individual John Cane, formerly a mariner, had penetrated to the same position from Natal, being sent there by orders of the Zulo King, Chaka; the notes and geographical sketches of the former, with the information derived from the latter person, *vivâ voce*, have given an opportunity to fill up a map, and to give some description of the people inhabiting the regions thus visited.

These numerous expeditions, to which may be added the itineraries of many Colonial traders, who have now traversed almost every part of Cafferland, even one hundred and twenty miles beyond Port Natal, to the kraal of Dingaan, the present Chieftain of the Zulo people, with that of Dr. Smith, who, accompanied by Lieutenant Edie of the 98th Regiment, made a scientific journey to Natal in 1832, have afforded us a tolerably well-defined knowledge of the

outlines of the geography of this portion of the African continent.

Having thus gone through an account of the progress of discovery along the shores of the South-eastern coast, I proceed to give an outline of their geography, and at the same time some idea of their respective population; but a sketch of this kind can only touch upon the more prominent parts of a subject of such magnitude and interest.

I. The first great political division of the interior, next to the Colonial limits, is that under the Amakosæ tribes, or Caffers Proper, bounded from the Colony by the Keiskamma River on the west; by part of the Ombashee River on the east; by the ocean on the south, and on the north by the secondary range of mountains, a subordinate ridge to that vast chain proceeding from the Colony, and keeping an average distance of about one hundred miles from the coast, and which there is every reason to believe (running behind Delagoa, as far as which it has been traced) joins the Lapata range at the Zambezi River, whose existence has not only been doubted, but absolutely denied. It is well watered, and the following are its chief streams.

The Keiskamma,—with rather a short course,—rises in the Winterberg Mountain, which is snow capped for several months in the year, and the parent of rivers which reach both the southern coast and the Orange River, and through that extensive drain, the Atlantic Ocean, falls into the sea, about lat.  $33^{\circ} 12'$ , long.  $27^{\circ} 40'$ , and appears to be open to navigation: its shores at its æstuary possess every material for building, as well as every other advantage for the formation of a civilized establishment.

The Konkay or Buffalo River is the next in order, and of equal length with the Keiskamma; a Wesleyan Missionary Station of some promise is situated upon one of its

branches: its mouth is about twenty miles from that of the Keiskamma.

The Goonobie, or Brambleberry River, follows next in magnitude, and is about twenty miles beyond the last-mentioned.

The 'Kwelegha blends its waters with the ocean: twenty miles in advance, it is a considerable river, and equal to the Keiskamma.

The 'Knebia or Kei, the White Keys River of the maritime charts, falls into the sea in lat.  $32^{\circ} 35'$ , and long.  $28^{\circ} 30'$ : it is a very large stream, and waters a wide extent of country; its sources are in the Stormberg mountains, one hundred and sixty miles direct from the coast; a part of the great range already alluded to, from which it issues by several *spruits* or branches in the Tambookee, of which I shall have occasion hereafter to speak. The principal of these branches are the Stormberg, the Zwarte Kei, the Ameva, and the Somo, the latter crossed for the first time by civilized men by W. van Reenen's party, in search of the Grosvenor Indiaman. These various spruits join previous to entering the Amakosæ territory, where, together, they form the Witte or White Kei, or Kei River.

The 'Kobaknabba, whose æstuary is about eight miles from the mouth of the Knebia, is rather a large stream, fertilizing a large and populous valley; and next is the Kogha, of similar size, near which the wreck of the French vessel, L'Ecole, took place in 1829, in that part marked in Commodore Owen's survey as Sandy Point.

The 'Ombashee is a large river, having several tributaries in the secondary range of mountains in the Tambookie country. This river forms the extreme boundary of the Caffers Proper, whose territory it enters about twenty-five miles from the coast: it is supposed to be navigable.

The Gnabbaka, twenty miles from the Kobaknabba, is also a fine stream, much like the last-named.

---

The superficial extent of the territory of this tribe may be estimated at about five thousand square miles; it is generally more fertile than the Colonial possessions, much better timbered and more abundantly watered, numerous small streams intervening between those just named, but which are not open to the sea, except at the time of freshets, being blocked up by sandy bars. Rain is frequent, chiefly in summer, the dry season being in the winter. The surface of the country is very much broken by ravines filled with a thick jungle of bushes, while the more level spots are covered with forests of that graceful and odoriferous tree, the *mimosa Capensis*. Its birds, its insects, and its botanical treasures, are rich, varied, and unrivalled, and offer a field "white to the harvest" for the collector, gleanings alone from which have yet been gathered. Game, that is, objects of the chase, are rare, the native hunters having almost exhausted the quarry.

The Amakosæ tribe inhabiting this country has already been described by several writers, and its history brought down to very late periods. Barrow, Lichtenstein, and Burchell, have each contributed their collections to our stock of knowledge of this people. To Thompson's work some very interesting notes are appended by one of the Missionaries, the Rev. Mr. Brownlee; and an extremely well drawn up paper on the subject, by Mr. Assistant-Surgeon Morgan, has been published in the Journal of the South African Literary and Scientific Institution.

II. The next division is that of the Amaytymbæ, or Tambookie tribe of Caffers, the supposed progenitors of the

Amakosæ tribes, from whom they are now most distinctly divided as a nation. Their country is situated behind the latter-named people. The Zwarte Kei, rising in the Winterberg, and the Stormberg River, so named from the mountain in which it first bursts into existence, separate them from the colonists; the grand northern range of mountains from the Bechuanas of the Orange River, a somewhat undefined and undulating line along the subsidiary ridge, until it reaches the Ombashee River, from the Amakosæ, and thence in a north-easterly course to one of the sources of the Omtata River, from the neighbouring tribe, the Amaponda.

The extent of this territory comprises six thousand miles, and can only be contrasted, not compared, with that of the Caffers Proper: it is poorly watered, the streams which intersect it, the heads of the Bashee, Omtata, and Kei Rivers being merely a succession of pools, except in the rainy season. It is composed of extensive elevated, dry, and unsheltered plains, a real karoo of desert, parched by a burning sun in summer, and chilled by excessive cold in the opposite season. Trees, and those even of stunted growth, are only found along the banks of the river, giving, by their dark and regularly marked lines, to the spectator from any elevation, a map-like appearance to the country, the intervening spaces being destitute of any shrub of more than a few inches in height. The pasturage is, however, luxuriant at certain seasons: its growth after rain appears almost miraculous; but droughts of months, and sometimes of years' extent, render a large portion of this country permanently uninhabitable, thus perpetuating, as it must have originated, the nomadic manners of the race, which at present finds a wretched and precarious subsistence on its

inhospitable surface. The natives partake of the characters of the region they occupy, while the Caffer Proper is a daring savage, warlike by disposition, imposing in appearance, and independent in character. The Tambookie, or Amaytymbæ, is mild even to timidity: more frail in person, and cowardly almost to imbecility in danger, he is assailed by the Bushman from the north, by his brother Caffer on the south, by the marauding and predatory tribes from the east, and maintains an uncertain tenure of his native territory: he is kept constantly in a state of almost pauperism; Famine frequently stalks with his gaunt form through the kraals of his people; and yet the Tambookie, unlike the Caffer, seldom if ever crosses the colonial boundary to abstract any of the numerous herds which feed within his very sight; but when pressed by hunger or alarmed by danger, he comes in peace, tells his woe-begone tale to the colonist, is fed, advised, and instructed, and returns the friend of the white man. Such has been the state of the relations between our regular colonists and this tribe for a very long period; while that of the southern neighbourhood, civilized and savage, has been one of mutual encroachment and sanguinary contest.

I have pointed out the principal features of the two foregoing divisions of the country separately, because occupied by two great political communities,—the Amakosæ and Amaytymbæ people. As there are, beyond those to the frontiers of the Zulo power, no longer any considerable societies of men bound nationally together, like the before-mentioned people, but a mere succession of numerous but small and broken hordes, the wreck of former populous tribes subdued by the Zulo tyrant and conqueror, Chaka, and other depredators upon a lesser scale, set into motion by his



example, I am obliged to describe the intermediate country according to its natural divisions; and in doing this I shall generally assume the larger rivers as boundaries of tracts, or cantons, of which I presume to give as brief and as concise an account as possible.

III. In the first place, then, I take from the Ombashee River to the Omzimvooboo, the St. John's River of the charts.

This tract will contain about seven thousand two hundred square miles; it is fertile in an extraordinary degree, highly picturesque, well watered by numerous streams and rivers constantly flowing; it is however travelled over with great difficulty and loss of time, being intersected every few miles by deep ravines.

The Kogha, Impaakoo, Omtata, Omtongala, the two Omgazis, and the Omzimvooboo, water this extensive region, the first of which is a well-supplied stream.

The Impaakoo, a smaller river, is remarkable from its waters passing into the ocean through a singular arched aperture in the rocks, which has been named by Commodore Owen, when surveying the coast, "The Hole in the Wall:" it is situated in lat.  $30^{\circ} 5'$ , and long.  $29^{\circ} 8'$ .

The Omtata rises from distantly separated sources in the great range of mountains, collecting tribute from numerous streams, and combines with the sea in about lat.  $31^{\circ} 5'$ , and long.  $29^{\circ} 15'$ . It has a tide-way of eight miles, and appears to be open for shipping. Upon its western sources it was that the marauder Mantuana was attacked by Major Dundas, and within a month afterwards by Colonel Somerset, in 1828, and his predatory band entirely routed, to the salvation of the Caffer nations, who would, there is every reason to believe, if unsupported, have been totally destroyed. This stream is represented as very beautiful, maintaining a

canal-like appearance by its evenness of width, unlike most of the rivers to the westward, having but little jungle, but plenty of fine timber, and it could easily be led out if requisite for the purpose of irrigation. The Omtongala succeeds as next in consequence, at about ten miles in advance, and the greater and lesser Omgazis, the Mogassie of the traveller William van Reenen, follows at another advance of twenty miles, at the mouth of which, according to report, there is a fine but small inlet or bay.

A very few miles farther brings us to the Omzimvooboo, the Sinwowoe of Van Reenen; the native name is translatable as the Great Sea-Cow River, of which animal it is full, and is the St. John's River of our hydrographical maps. It is one of the largest streams on the coast, and rises in the Ingale, or Snowy Mountain, the great range already so frequently mentioned; its eastern course is called Omsimclaff, and it is joined by five very considerable branches from the westward. This stream forms a mighty barrier, or rather gulph, between the eastern and western territories, and has along its whole course, of about one hundred miles direct, but two or three passes, from the steepness of its rocky banks, which near the mouth are from fifteen hundred to two thousand feet high: in fact, it appears that some extraordinary convulsion has split the solid mountain in two, to allow the escape of its impetuous waters. A road, with much difficulty, has been made by the indefatigable Caffer traders from the Colony, down this awful deep, and waggons now easily pass through it on their way to and from the Colony to Natal. At its æstuary the width is about four hundred yards, spreading inside into a splendid and perfectly sheltered basin. It appears to be the most capable of entrance of all the rivers to the eastward; and Lieutenant King of the Royal Navy, who minutely examined it

in a boat, had determined to enter it with his vessel, but death, unfortunately for him and the cause of civilization prevented this important project being carried into effect. The Omzimvooboo enters the sea in lat.  $31^{\circ} 30'$ , and long.  $29^{\circ} 25'$ .

The inhabitants of this country belong to the race called Amapondas, whose territory formerly reached to the river Omtavoo, seven miles beyond St. John's, but now, in consequence of the conquests of Chaka, few are found beyond the last-named stream. They are a superior race to the Caffers, although evidently derived from the same common origin, more cleanly in their residences and persons, greater cultivators of the soil, and have in former times been a very powerful nation. They are now to be seen under great disadvantages, from the effects of the distress to which they have been reduced by the complete plunder of their herds, and hurried as they have been from one situation to another by the cruel and ambitious Zuloes.

Besides this people, a most interesting little tribe occupy a portion of the country I have just described, whose existence has already been made known by W. van Reenen, in 1790, when in search of the survivors of the Grosvenor Indian. I allude to the descendants of Europeans wrecked on this coast, the re-discovery of whom has awakened long-slumbering sympathies for the fate of the parties saved from that dreadful scene of destruction. The expedition of Major Dundas, in 1828, already mentioned, was the first, since the time of Van Reenen, which fell in with these people, of whose history and present circumstances our late intercourse with the interior has given us frequent opportunities to procure information; a considerable mass of facts connected with which I have been able to collect, but they are by far too voluminous for this paper.

IV. From the Omzimvooboo to the Omtavoomoo River, is a distance along the coast of fifty-five miles, and the division I have marked by these boundaries contains about two thousand superficial miles. It is almost destitute of human inhabitants, a few only residing close to the first-named streams, and belonging to the Amaponda race, having been depopulated by the firebrand and spear of the Zulo conqueror, whose march has been well traced by our readers by the innumerable remains of human skeletons with which the whole country is strewn. The Omtavoomoo River, whose source is seventy miles long, and whose æstuary is in lat.  $30^{\circ} 55'$ , and long.  $30^{\circ} 7'$ , is a great physical line of demarcation, and forms a perfect boundary between the north-eastern and south-western part of the coast, distinguished by the comparative severity of its temperature and climate, the cold being intense, and the rains very frequent, as well as by the difference in its vegetable productions, the wild date and banana, which are common beyond this division, entirely ceasing to exist westward of this stream. All the seaward portion of this tract is covered by dense woods, and possesses the most magnificent forest scenery. Its trees have been generally represented as very different from any of the Colonial kinds, and one especially has received the homage of most of the travellers, but unfortunately not yet of a botanist. It is chiefly found in the extensive woods near the Omzimvooboo, and its river; is described as being seventy feet in height, perfectly straight, when it at once spreads into a canopy of foliage, quite flat, and impervious both to light and rain, the top of a single tree in the dense mass of other kinds appearing, from the neighbouring heights, like a fine grass-plot, and when several are together, like fine lawns. One specimen has been particularly noticed by Messrs. Cowie and Green, as shad-

ing a circumference of twenty yards in diameter: the leaves were eleven inches long, and one and a half broad, and deeply serrated.

The inner range of country is much more free of wood, and consists of large plains, but so swampy as to be travelled over in a direct line with much trouble: game is abundant; and, since the spoil of the flocks by their conquerors, has mainly supplied them with food, and enabled them to collect fresh herds from their westerly neighbours by the sale of antelope skins, especially those of the blue buck, the *antelope pygmea*, a favourite and costly ornament, used for the head dress of the Caffer belles. Laws of great severity have, therefore, been enacted, and scrupulously administered, to protect this now important branch of trade; and the various Chiefs have respectively assumed a landed proprietorship over several districts, which they either hunt in themselves, or let out at high prices for determinate periods to parties of native adventurers, thus creating a novel and lucrative source of wealth to repair their previous numerous losses.

The coast from the Omzimvooboo or St. John's River, to the Omtavoomoo, is one continued bed of elevated rocks without one patch of sand; oysters are most abundant along this whole line, and of the most delicious kind. Most of the rivers and rivulets, with which the country is almost incessantly intersected, precipitate themselves over those rocky ledges into the sea, in numerous and beautiful cataracts, more than one of which are said to have a fall of full three hundred feet. It was on this iron-bound and inhospitable shore that the Grosvenor East Indiaman's wreck occurred in the year 1782. This catastrophe took place about seven miles westward of the Omzimcaaba River, or in lat.  $31^{\circ} 10'$ , and long.  $29^{\circ} 50'$ , where eighty-six pigs of iron wedged in

the rocks, five large guns, a quantity of iron ballast piled up, which the tradition of the natives represents as having been the forge of the blacksmith of the vessel, (who chose to remain among them rather than brave the dangers of an exploratory journey into the interior in search of a rescue, and who died at a very late period,) attest this place as the awful scene of one of the most destructive and melancholy shipwrecks with which we are acquainted. It has also been supposed, from the immense quantity of drift wreck, in which cocoa-nuts are frequently found, and which accumulates on the rocky shore in an extraordinary manner, that the force of the waters passing through the Mosambique channel expends itself at this part of the coast, or, to use the more significant phrase, I find, in the notes from which I partly made this compilation, that this is the tail of the great Mozambique current.

V. The Terra de Natal, the next division, commences at the Omtavoomoo River, and is bounded on the east by the Omtongala or Fisher's River of the charts. Its superficial contents are about nine thousand square miles. It is a natural division, possessing similar productions and the same climate, and distinguished from the north-eastern country, which is hotter, less healthy, and more arid; and from the south-western, which is cold, damp, and variable.

The chief rivers which water this delightful region are the Omzimvooboo, the Omcoonias, (the streams of which fall into Natal Bay,) the Omganie, and, lastly, the Omtongala. The Omzimvooboo, or Great River, which its native name imports, is a large stream, emptying its constantly-replenished reservoir into the ocean, in about lat.  $30^{\circ} 30'$ , and long.  $30^{\circ} 25'$ . Its æstuary appears to be accessible to shipping; it has a course of above ninety miles, is full of fish, especially eels, haunted by a number of hippopotami, and

its wooded and picturesque banks are thickly populated by that real monarch of the forest, the stately elephant.

The Omcoonas, or Cow River, is a very fine stream, and open at the mouth: its first drift, or ford, is about four miles from its æstuary, at which place the river is one hundred and fifty yards wide, and three feet deep.

Like all the other streams along the coast, it is remarkable for the translucency and sweetness of its waters: wild fruits, of some very fine and large kinds, worthy, it is imagined, to be introduced into our gardens, are said to be abundant in the neighbourhood. Alligators begin to be found here, and a species of the boa is said to infest the woods.

The harbour of Natal is situated in lat.  $29^{\circ} 53'$ , and long.  $30^{\circ} 55'$ , is about three miles in depth by two and a half in breadth, containing three small islands, easy of access from the shore at low water. The eastern side is a low sandy flat covered with wood, reaching to the margin of the sea, and at high tide presents the singular appearance of an inundated forest. At the head of the bay is a large plain covered with trees, bamboos, and long grass, but swampy near the water. Three small rivers discharge themselves near this plain. The western side is protected by a bluff point of land covered with bush, which has inside of it fine anchorage and careening ground. The entrance is about three hundred yards wide at high water, and the depth at this time twelve feet, which at the equinoctial tides exceeds fourteen. It is recommended, in attempting to enter this port, for vessels to proceed, with a westerly wind, northwards to Omtongala or Fisher's River, to prevent being carried to the westward by the current, when the usually short duration of the westerly wind enables the navigator to enter, taking advantage of the tide and an easterly breeze.

The banks of the Omganie River are described as very beautiful, from its romantic rock scenery. It is about one hundred and fifty yards wide at one mile and a half from its mouth, which is situate in about lat.  $29^{\circ} 50'$ , and long.  $30^{\circ} 55'$ . It offers every possible advantage as a future settlement for a civilized population, having abundance of limestone, and chalk, fine timber, a rich soil, the most luxuriant pasturage in the world, the capability of irrigation, if required, for thousands of acres, and a land-locked harbour, within six miles. Bananas grow spontaneously in this highly-favoured region.

The serpentine Omtongala, the Fisher's River of the charts, bounds the rich and delightful district of Natal. It is second only in size to the St. Lucia and Mapoota Rivers, and it rises in a breach of the Ingale or Snowy Mountains, about two hundred and fifty miles from the coast, where it disembogues in about lat.  $29^{\circ} 20'$ , and long.  $31^{\circ} 25'$ , being fed along its lengthened course by innumerable tributaries. Its extreme breadth is from one mile to a mile and a half, and its first ford, six miles from the mouth, is two hundred yards across. A large salt-pan exists near its source, but very difficult of access, and lower down is a warm-bath, sufficiently hot at times to boil an egg.

The climate of this division is salubrious throughout the year, suffering no great extremes: rains generally arrive with the westerly wind, but seldom last more than three or four days together, when the east wind springing up clears the atmosphere: the east and westerly winds are the most prevailing.

The planting season commences in July, and the country corn continues to ripen from the month of January to that of May, so that there is a constant harvest during those months.



The soil coastwise is generally sandy, but capable of raising most luxuriant crops of millet and maize: proceeding inland, it assumes a reddish hue and loamy stiffness, changing as it recedes to a black and deep mould, until, at the end of the base of the mountains, it becomes gravelly and stony. The country is covered at intervals by forests of considerable extent, but which are difficult to explore, from the impervious nature of the underwood. Trees of large size are rare about the port itself, although the smaller kinds are most plentiful. At the distance of fifty miles, however, are extensive woods, containing trees of the largest dimensions; and in the Impensewan or Ingale Mountains, are inexhaustible supplies of ship and other timber easily transportable to the harbour.

The native inhabitants of this place are, at present, the wretched and scattered remains of that once populous tribe described by Captain Woodes Rogers, and other navigators in the seventeenth century, as remarkable for their Arcadian felicity, their innocence of manners, and humanity to strangers. By the ambitious policy of the late Zoola Chieftain, they have been dwindled down into a small number of fugitives, finding a precarious existence from the indigenous and wild produce of the field.

Besides these people, there is a considerable number of Europeans from the Colony, settled round the port for the purpose of trade; but of late a want of confidence in the Zoola ruler, Dingaen, and of unanimity among themselves, arising out of a petty and misplaced jealousy of each other's success, has brought this flourishing settlement into a very low condition, and, if not soon supported by the arm of a recognized government, it must be altogether abandoned.

Does the fabled "Lotus" grow in this portion of Africa,

of which all who have eaten desire to remain, and all those who have roamed from its feast pine to return? Is there a *maladie de pays*, a sickness not of home, but for a foreign land, generated by the atmosphere of this clime, barbarous only as respects its inhabitants? or why is it that no one individual, whatever his pursuits, whatever the circumstances which have thrown him upon, or directed his steps to this land,—trade,—science, or misfortunes,—but seems enraptured with the natural beauties of the country? The wrecked mariner, even while despairing of returning to his civilized home, has not withheld his meed of praise; the adventurous trader, searching for his profit thus far from home, has expressed a frequent wish that this was “his own, his native land;” and the only scientific visitor to these regions declared a wish to live and die there. There must be certainly something extraordinary in a country, to call forth so general a testimony in its favour.

VI. The next division is that comprised between the Omtongala and St. Lucia Rivers, including numerous branches of the latter, and probably contains about ten thousand square miles. It is the chief seat of the Zoola power, and was acquired for that nation from its conquests over numerous divided tribes formerly its inhabitants.

Four large streams fertilize this territory, besides innumerable others of smaller size, but it is not so well watered as the preceding divisions.

The Amatekoola or Great River rises in the secondary range of mountains, is open at its mouth, situated in about lat.  $29^{\circ} 12'$ , and long.  $31^{\circ} 34'$ , and is frequently subject to great floods.

The Omlelaas, or King's River, is said to have seven feet of water on the bar at low water, and it disembogues itself in about lat.  $29^{\circ}$ , long.  $31^{\circ} 40'$ .

The Omslatoos is open at its estuary, and has a fine sheltered basin inside its mouth: it is about eighteen miles in advance of the Omlelaas.

Between the Omslatoos and the St. Lucia, several streams enter the ocean; but as the country has hardly been trodden by European feet, little is really known respecting them.

The St. Lucia, or Omvaloozie, which latter is its native name, is a stream of large magnitude, deriving its chief supplies from three great sources originating in the inner range, or Ingale Mountains, and called respectively the Valoozie Intlopie, or White Valoozie, Valoozie Innami, or Black Valoozie, and Valoozie itself. From the secondary ridge, a number of considerable streams pour their waters into the principal river, and having all united into one common channel, fifteen miles from the sea, where it takes the name of Omvaloozie, it discharges itself in lat.  $27^{\circ} 45'$ , and long.  $32^{\circ} 32'$ . The principal branch, the Black Valoozie, is described by Messrs. Cowie and Green, at sixty-three miles from the sea, where they passed it on the road to Delagoa, as deep, and above one hundred yards wide, dangerous to cross, from the number of quicksands and alligators, with which it swarms. Its banks are swampy, covered with rushes, and overgrown by the wild fig-tree, of very large dimensions, some measuring six feet in diameter.

The climate and appearance of this division is very different from that of Natal; towards the sea are extensive plains, sandy and swampy, above which the country is mountainous and generally bare of wood, although there are some few fine forests of timber-trees. The heat of the summer is almost insupportable. Metallic ores are said to be abundant; and it has also been asserted by several visitors, that silver is to be found here, but that a superstitious dread on the part of the natives prevents the old mines, or rather

the excavations, from being re-opened. The whole of this division is rife with human existence, the Zulos having selected it as their country, and pitched their chief kraal or capital, called Nobambe, on the heights above the Zimteanga, a stream which falls into the White Valoozie. To give an account of this nation, by far the most extraordinary and interesting of those who inhabit the African continent in modern times, of their amazing conquests, which have extended over an area of one hundred and sixty thousand square miles; their manners, policy, government, and other matters essential to the description of a people,—would be impossible within the limits of the present notice, which has already overgrown its proper size.

VII. From St. Lucia to Delagoa Bay, is a tract of ten thousand square miles, almost destitute of inhabitants, the Zulos having devastated the country, in their mad career of bloodshed and rapine. This region, for a long distance inland, is low and marshy, which character it preserves, it is said, as far as Mozambique. It teems with animal life of all descriptions, among which, are also those of the most noxious and dangerous kinds,—lions, tigers, alligators, and snakes of great variety, including the boa. Inward from the coast, the country becomes hilly until it reaches the Ingale, or snowy range of mountains, whose summit is one vast plateau, destitute of wood, rocky, but affording good pasturage, inhabited by small kraals of Buchuanas, and a few scattered families of Bushmen.

Compared with the divisions already enumerated, water is much scarcer as we proceed towards Delagoa, and the rivers are found at wider intervals; the chief of these are the Omcoos, the Pongola, and the Mapoota. The Omcoos rises at a long distance from the coast, but its entire course has not yet been traced: its estuary is supposed to be the

same named in the charts as the Gold Downs River, situated in lat.  $27^{\circ}$ , long.  $32^{\circ} 50'$ . The Pongola is a fine stream, and was formerly the seat of a native state of some consideration. It has lately been stated that the Gold Downs River of the chart and the Pongola are identical, but without sufficient authority; while, from the map sketched by Messrs. Cowie and Green, the Pongola is made to fall into the Mapoota.

The Mapoota, La Zoota of the natives, is the largest river of the country: its sources are unknown, but supposed to be in the northern side of the Ingale Mountains, somewhere behind Natal. It has water sufficient for vessels of sixty tons burthen as high as thirty miles from its mouth, and a boat navigation for a long distance beyond: its width varies from fifty to five hundred yards, its banks are covered with dense forests for forty miles, when the country taking a rise, they begin to disappear: the scenery, as described by several visitors, must be very majestic.

Delagoa Bay, the most southern possession of the Portuguese government, on the eastern side of Africa, as fixed by the treaty of the year 1825, is too well known to require particular description here.

It has been occupied by several nations at different times, but without success; and its only pertinacious masters, the Portuguese, hold, it is evident, a very insecure tenure of the place, being frequently obliged to shut themselves up in their miserable and ruinous fort as a protection against the warlike savages, irritated by constant ill treatment: so late as the year 1824, a party, with the Governor, fifty disciplined soldiers, and three hundred men, were cut off by a popular Chief. The natives of Delagoa Bay are called, by the Zulos, Amacluangas, from whom, in language and manners, they materially differ; but from Delagoa Bay to Sofala the people appear to be one common stock.

The country south of the Mapoota, called Inyack, is under the authority of a very powerful native Chief, named Maccassanie, who, assisted and instigated by the Portuguese, keeps up a constant warfare with his neighbours of Tembe, situated on the north of the same stream. The king of this district was Myetta, who, in consequence of the insults and oppressions of the Portuguese, and the inroads of Maccassaine's warriors, ceded his dominions to Great Britain, in the hope of protection, in March 1823, while his Majesty's ship the *Leven* was in the bay: this act proved fatal to himself and his countrymen; for as soon as Commodore Owen, commanding that vessel, had left, he was again attacked himself, and many of his people put to death, and almost all the remainder sold into slavery, at the instigation of the Portuguese—at the fort.

The country from the Pongola to the English River, on the northern side of which is situated the Portuguese fort, is low, sandy, and full of swamps, is covered with a stunted description of bush; and although the atmosphere is healthy for several months in the year, from the latter end of October to April it is most deadly. The limits of this sickly region westward appear to be marked by a range of mountains of no very considerable height, called Bombo, which, originating in the Ingale, skirt the Pongola River, and run directly nearly to the sea, in a south-easterly direction, bounding the great valley of the Mapoota and Gold Downs River from the salubrious country on the south. Throughout this whole range, as has been already remarked, water is less plentiful than in the preceding divisions, and is generally sought for in ponds, or in wells dug for the purpose.

Some very beautiful lakes have been discovered on both sides of the Mapoota; and there is one said to exist near its

mouth, of very great extent, and which, very probably, empties itself into Port Melville, a good harbour on the southern side of Delagoa Bay.

From what has preceded, it will be seen that the progress of discovery from the Cape of Good Hope has extended to a very considerable depth into the continent, beyond the Colony, and that, especially of late years, it has accelerated its space in a very extraordinary degree, mainly attributable to trading speculation. With reference to the map, its limits may be defined in a general manner by drawing a line from Angra Peguena Bay, on the Atlantic coast, direct north, to lat.  $25^{\circ}$ , along that parallel to longitude  $19^{\circ}$ , thence southward to lat.  $28^{\circ}$ , from that point eastward to  $22^{\circ}$ , and thence in a diagonal to where the twenty-sixth degree of longitude intersects the tropic of Capricorn: starting again along the tropical parallel to longitude  $31^{\circ}$ , if the reader will please to protract a line southerly to the mouth of the river in Delagoa Bay, he will then have traced out the extensive boundary of all the discoveries that have yet been made from the most austral settlement of Africa. Within this verge, however, a space containing about fifty thousand square miles still appears unexplored: this embosoms three large sources of the Gariep or Orange River, namely, the Caledon and Stockenstrom rivers on the south, and the Donkin on the north, and may be represented as an oval figure, having in its centre about lat.  $28^{\circ} 30'$ , and long.  $25^{\circ} 20'$ , the longest arm of which, stretching from south-west to north-east, will extend over two hundred and forty miles, and the shorter, running from south to north, over two hundred miles. This insulated spot has, however, been several times encroached upon by the Colonial farmers, and especially by one named Gert Cloete, of the Graaff-Reinet district, who represents it as very beautiful, abounding with game, well wooded, sufficiently watered, and covered

with the remains of the labours of a superior race of natives, who had been accustomed to fortify the approaches to their town, by closing up the gorges of their ravines by ramparts constructed of stone.

Beyond the line just alluded to as marking the limits of penetration into the interior, from the Colony of the Cape of Good Hope to the boundaries of Portuguese discovery, a huge blank stretches itself quite across the continent, utterly unknown to commerce, to science, to philanthropy, and to religion. Native testimony has peopled these regions with monsters, and with men worse than monsters, for it appears to be the object of all savage communities to vilify their neighbours; it represents it as thickly populated, containing numerous large towns, extensive collections of inland waters, either mediterranean seas or great lakes, and considerable forests. It is to this part of the continent that the expedition about to leave the Colony is to direct its researches, and a more interesting field of inquiry can hardly be imagined, or elsewhere exist in this globe of ours, which is so rapidly yielding up its last store of hidden treasures to the curiosity of man. The Genius of Geography, like the Macedonian Hero surveying his noble acquirements, will soon have to weep over them, regretting that she, too, has no other worlds to conquer.

This enormous *terra incognita*, this sequestered range, this unenlightened spot is, after all, an insulated division of the continent. It has its defined boundary, and there is every reason to believe, from the Portuguese archives, published by the late lamented Mr. Bowdich, a nearly continuous one from the eastern to the western oceans. The limits enclosing it on the south, that is separating it from the countries now traversed by the traders from the Cape of Good Hope, have been already traced.



Its northern boundary may be expressed from lines drawn from where the latitudinal and longitudinal points of  $35^{\circ}$  and  $20^{\circ}$  intersect in Sofala Bay, thence eastward to a similar intersection in  $27^{\circ}$  and  $19^{\circ}$ , thence north to latitude  $15^{\circ}$ , again west to latitude  $13^{\circ}$ , longitude  $20^{\circ}$ , from that point south-east to long.  $15^{\circ}$  lat.  $19^{\circ}$ , and thence to Fish Bay upon the Atlantic shores, in lat.  $16^{\circ} 30'$ , and long.  $13^{\circ}$ .

The vast territory overhanging this line of demarcation is claimed by the Portuguese, and it is upon the entrance of this alone that any serious difficulty or danger to exploratory adventures may be anticipated. Portuguese jealousy and treachery are proverbial, and both of these vices it is too well known have a luxuriant growth under the southern hemisphere : these would no doubt be called into full excitation by the appearance of a party of travellers from a British settlement within the pale of their trade and influence ; but as the nearest point of their penetration to the south is distant more than four degrees from the tropic, there is but little chance of the present expedition incurring the hazard of collision with a Portuguese outpost, more especially if its conductor, Dr. Smith, followed up the plan entertained by the Committee of Management, of making distance an object of subordinate importance to a full and connected survey of the countries through which it may pass. Although it was not contemplated to say anything regarding these countries, when the present paper was commenced, and is not quite within its scope, still as the connection of the lines of discovery from the Cape with those of the Portuguese is an object of importance, and must be the aim of future adventurers, I shall in this place add, by way of conclusion, a few notices from Salt's excellent work on Abyssinia, and Bowdich's account of the discoveries of the Portuguese in Angola and Mozambique.

The territory just indicated as belonging to the Portu-

guese, or rather that to which they lay (a very shadowy) claim, consists of the valleys of the Congo, Coanza, and Cunene, on the west, and that of the Zambezi River, in the colony of Mozambique, on the east, with their respective and wide-spreading tributary streams. Discoveries made from time to time by Europeans and natives, from both these remote settlements into the interior, have, it is believed, connected them, and we have almost indubitable evidence that an overland communication has been established from one to the other. The western colonies extend inland from the coast to very unequal distances, that of Congo three hundred miles, Angola to seven hundred, and Bengula to two hundred: the force kept up at the latter place consists of one hundred infantry and fifty artillery, together with troops of the line. Each of the forts of Encoche, on the river Onzozo, Massangano, on a branch of the Coanza, and Canda, (the last the most healthy, and farthest south, situated in lat.  $14^{\circ} 35'$ , and  $17^{\circ}$  each,) has one hundred infantry; and the other forts, of which there are many, have each sixty, "all recruited among the natives," commanded by Portuguese officers of the line. Besides these regular troops, a militia of the inhabitants of the neighbourhood, armed by the Government, and officered by Portuguese residents, is kept up at each establishment, "both in the interior and on the coast. With this militia, which amounts to several thousands, conducted by officers of the line, and other contingencies of native force which the different states are bound to furnish, the Government carries on whatever wars it may be involved in against the Cassanges and other nations, who frequently bring into the hostile field armies of eighteen thousand men.

"The commercial establishments called Fairs, or Feiras, two of which are seven hundred miles within land, are under the superintendance of the Portuguese Resident, who

is stationed there for the purpose of keeping up a continual correspondence with the Governor-General, and to prevent his countrymen, who frequent these markets periodically, from abusing the confidence of the natives or offending them by any other injury.

“ The first attempt to open a direct communication with Mozambique was made during the government of Count Saldanha. M. de Costa, a respectable Portuguese merchant, who formerly commanded the militia in the interior, having retired, from some disgust, went and established himself as a trader in Cassange, where he lived many years in harmony with the natives. To this gentleman Count Saldanha, soon after his arrival at the seat of government in 1807, applied for information respecting the practicability of employing an expedition on a route of discovery:

“ After receiving several communications favourable to the object he had in view, the Count authorised M. de Costa to send a Portuguese mulatto, stationed at one of the fairs in Cassange, accompanied by native guides and interpreters, to penetrate, if possible, to Mooloa, a country hitherto unknown to Europeans except by the report of its populousness and power. The mulatto, after a journey of two months, from the southernmost fair in Cassange, reached the capital of Mooloa \*, where he met with a liberal reception from the monarch Muata Janvo. This Muata, for that it seems is the titular name, lives at a considerable distance from his wife, who governs another state perfectly independent of her husband, with whom she only resides on particular days of the year. The town of the Mooloas is laid out in streets, which are watered daily, and there are held in it regular markets. A horrid practice of sacrificing from fifteen to twenty negroes every day, prevails both at the court of the Muata and that

\* Situated at about lat. 11° 30', long. 32° 20'.

of his wife. Their neighbours on the south-east pay them tribute in marine salt ; and they described another country as dependent on them, to which a Portuguese officer had recently penetrated from the eastern coast, and died there: this person was M. Lacerda, Colonel of Engineers.

“The king of the Mooloaas would not suffer the Portuguese envoy to pass through his territories for the eastern coast, until an understanding had been settled between himself and the Governor-General Saldanha, to whom accordingly two formal and distinct embassies were sent, one from the Muata, and the other from his wife, bearing separate presents. These Africans were clothed for the most part in European manufactures, obtained from the Portuguese settlement in Mozambique, and Count Saldanha remarked that they were not only a much finer race of men than those in the vicinity of the coast, but that they were also more civilized and intelligent.” “As they requested that a Portuguese mart or fair might be established in Mooloaa, Count Saldanha was encouraged to send another expedition, with orders to proceed to Mozambique, there to embark, and return by sea to Loanda. Unfortunately, however, this enlightened and enterprising governor, being soon afterwards recalled, and sent on an embassy to Russia, the project, from which so much benefit might have resulted, fell to the ground through the negligence of the Count’s successor, and the opposition of the Cassanges to the proposed commercial intercourse with the Mooloaas.”

Colonel Lacerda, who has been mentioned in the preceding extract as having arrived on the borders of the territories of Muata Janvo, was ordered by the Mozambique Government to penetrate inland from Tete, a considerable factory on the river Zambezi, where he died: a copy of his last despatch, which was placed in Mr. Bowdich’s hands,

is dated at Tete in March, 1798, from which place he was to proceed with six officers and fifty soldiers; from this expedition he never returned. His despatch, however, contained much valuable information—inclosed was the deposition of Gonsalvo Gaetano Perreira, who had penetrated to the capital of the Cazembe, which is situated more than half the distance to Benguela, where, immediately on his arrival, “ a messenger was dispatched to the king of Mooropooa, informing him that if he had seen white men from Angola, the Cazembe had received a like visit from Mozambique.”

An ambassador from the Cazembi visited Colonel Lacerda, at Tete, who furnished him with a route more southerly and direct than that pursued by Perreira, and stated that from the capital of his sovereign to that of Mooropooa (from which a constant communication is kept up with Benguela, and the coast canoes coming from Angola to within a short distance of it) was a journey of two months. Mooropooa is about two hundred miles distant from St. Philip de Benguela, direct east.

It will thus appear that two lines of communication have been opened between the eastern and western colonies of Portugal. In 1807, that from Benguela, through the fair at Cassange to the capital of the Muata Janvo, who trades with Mozambique, and that by Perreira, previous to 1798, from the latter place to the Cazembe, who maintain intercourse with Mooropooa, the latter place supplying Angola and the west coast with slaves and native produce.

The eastern settlements on the Zambezi or Cuama River, with their fairs, extend to above seven hundred miles from the coast; and, although much fallen off from their ancient splendour and extensive trade, are still important. Sena and Tete, which are built upon the river, are the headquarters commanding certain trading districts, besides

which is Zumbo, where the Portuguese are allowed a small factory by the natives.

Sena is a considerable town on the southern bank of the Zambezi, two hundred and sixty-seven miles above Quilimanci on the coast, and is the principal establishment: it contains about two thousand inhabitants, and, according to Bowdich, possesses a garrison of forty-nine men. It is protected by a strong fort, and is commanded by an officer subordinate to Mozambique, but superior over all other settlements on the river.

The chief mart for gold in the interior is in Manica, twenty days' journey south-west from Sena. Two fairs are held here for the convenience of trade, where the merchants of Sofala and Sena carry on their traffic; the site of one of these is placed by Bowdich in about lat.  $19^{\circ}$ , and long.  $31^{\circ} 30'$ , where is a force kept up of twelve men. This is the most southerly establishment of the Portuguese, upon the frontier of the Zambezi colony, and not above four hundred and fifty miles from Kurrechane, that is, about one-third of the distance between Kurrechane and Cape Town. The first part of the journey from Sena to the Manica fair lies through a country under the influence of the Portuguese, and the remaining part of it comprises districts in the hands of native tribes, which the traders are obliged to conciliate by frequent presents: a tribute is also still continued to be paid to the Quitevé, or king, for his permission to carry on the trade, for which purpose an annual deputation is sent from Sena to his capital, Zembao, situated about two days' journey from the frontiers of Manica, on a great rising in that territory: this stream is navigable, and Zimbao is reported to be about fifteen days' journey from Sofala Bay.

“The country round Manica is extremely fertile, and yields abundance of provisions and cattle. It is very

mountainous, and is supposed to lie at a great elevation above the sea, the weather at times being unusually cold for the latitude in which it is situated. Frequent storms of thunder and lightning occur, which are attributed by the Portuguese to the immense quantity of metallic substances with which the country abounds. The trade is here carried on by barter, and the goods most valued are Surat cloths, beads, coarse silks, and iron; and the returns, besides gold, consist of ivory, ghee, and a small quantity of copper."

Manica is principally watered by a branch of the Zambezi, the Manzora, or Arvanha River, which has several tributaries, the most westerly of which, the Mocaras, rises in Mount Fura, lying somewhere between lat. 18° and 19°, and long. 30°. This great mountain is said to be so abundant in the precious metal, that some have affirmed it to be the ancient "Ophir" of Solomon. Be that as it may, it is evident from the hewn stones found upon it, which tradition declares to have been formerly piled upon each other with great art, that it was at some remote period frequented and tenanted by tribes more powerful and skilful than the present inhabitants. The River which flows from it carries down its course sand mixed with gold. Tete is about sixty leagues farther up the river; and about half-way between it and Sena, is the pass of Lupata, where the stream is so contracted that a child may throw a stone across. The garrison consists of ninety-four regulars. Fifty leagues southwest of Tete are the ruins of Dambarrari, the former site of a fair, and once a large and flourishing town, where is still standing the steeple of the church, and even the clock in it.

A month's journey from Tete brings the trader to Zumbo fair. From Tete down the river to the sea is a continuous navigation; but from the former place to Zumbo, the first fifteen days has to be performed overland, in consequence of great falls in the river) to Chicova, the reputed

seat of large and rich silver mines, and thence in small boats to the trading station, from which the adventurers send out their agents in different directions, who in return for Surat cloths, beads, coarse silks, and iron, bring back gold, ivory, and other valuable articles.

From information procured by Bowdich, the Zumbo fair is held in about lat.  $17^{\circ} 30'$ , and long.  $27^{\circ} 30'$ , nearly five hundred miles direct north of Kurrechane, a point which is now frequently visited by the traders of the Cape Colony. It is surrounded by forests, and is a place of great resort; and a force of thirty-seven regulars is said to be maintained there by the Portuguese. To it is brought not only the principal part of the gold of the rich mines of Abutua (through which country the great river Cunene is supposed to run), one hundred and twenty leagues distant to the westward, but also that from the mines of Pemba and Murusura, "and what seems more extraordinary, considerable quantities of ivory from the Orange River." In this part of the interior the climate is mild and salubrious, but the resident Portuguese mulattos are represented to be very unprincipled. There are copper and iron mines near Zumbo, also beds of coal, various kinds of crystals, and an abundance of excellent timber\*.

JOHN CENTLIVRES CHASE.

---

Just as these sheets were going to press, I received "The Cape of Good Hope Literary Gazette" for February, 1835, containing a letter from Mr. A. G. Bain, the celebrated African traveller, giving an account of his recent perilous adventures across the Bechuana country north of Litakou.

\* South African Quarterly Journal, 1834.



This gentleman, accompanied by Mr. Biddulph, succeeded, in 1826, in penetrating as far as the 24th degree of north latitude, as will be perceived by a reference to the map, where their track is marked out, since which he has visited the various Caffer tribes extending along the eastern coast, as far as the Amaponda nation, from whence he had but recently returned when I met him at Graaff Reinet, in 1830. As the communication is replete with interest, and bears so immediately on the subject of the foregoing pages, there needs no apology for its insertion.

---

#### JOURNAL OF A TRAVELLER.

The author accompanies the Expedition under Dr. Smith as far as Philippolis—Estimate of the value of the party composing the Expedition—Manner of living—The Sabbath—Indian visitors—Boers in the Griqua country in search of pasture—Griqua and Hottentot servants—The Modder River—The Vaal River—Platberg—Poccana—Beauty of the country—Kraals of Corannas—Hart River—The Chief Makhatla—The party augmented by Corannas—*Seechagholie* River—Hunting and its successes—Description of the inhabitants of the country—Maloppo River—Preparation to meet an expected enemy—Some of the author's people abscond to steal cattle from Masilikatsie—A tribe of the Matebely avenge themselves—A battle; four of the natives killed—The Traveller routed with the loss of his waggons and rich collection of natural curiosities—Sufferings of the party in returning to the Colony—Missionary hospitalities, &c.

MY DEAR SIR,

*Graaff-Reinet, December 18, 1834.*

Knowing the interest you have always taken in every thing connected with the Expedition for exploring Central Africa, and having just returned from that part of the Con-

continent through which it must necessarily pass, I have hastily drawn up some details of my unfortunate journey for your perusal, leaving it entirely to yourself to extract such parts as you may think will be interesting to the Committee of the Association for exploring Central Africa.

You are aware that I accompanied the Expedition under Dr. Smith as far as Philippolis, and if the testimony of such a humble individual as myself could avail any thing, I can scarcely let this opportunity pass of congratulating the Committee on the happy and judicious choice they have made of the persons composing the party. Every one, from the highest to the lowest, seemed to know his duty, and to do it. Dr. Smith is the most indefatigable man I ever met with; nothing comes amiss to him; he sees every thing done himself, and trusts nothing to others. He seemed sometimes even to be ubiquitous, and seldom went to bed before one or two o'clock in the morning. He is, I think, in every respect the very man fitted to lead such an Expedition. Captain E—— would have a good deal to do to *drill* all the party, and teach them their various military evolutions. K—— is a most useful fellow, and a great favourite of the Doctor. The graphic and Cruickshankian labours of Mr. B——, with the delicate and minute products of Mr. F——'s pencil, were the subject of daily admiration to us all. The *astronomer*, by which familiar appellation that promising young gentleman, Mr. B——, was known, had no sinecure situation. He will, I think, be a bright fellow.

The men also, in more subordinate grades, are an orderly, well-behaved set of people, and some of them very clever and well educated. Indeed, nothing can surpass the good order and harmony that prevails throughout the whole party; and if they do not ultimately succeed in all their undertakings, I do not think it will be the blame of any one composing the Expedition.

Their manner of living was also exceedingly simple:

“Nae kickshaws, or puddins, or tarts, were seen there!”

but at ten o'clock, when the bell rung for breakfast, we\* entered the tent, each armed with his knife and fork, where we found the table (I beg pardon, the mat, I mean) spread on the floor, on which was placed a hearty meal of beef or mutton, or what game the day produced, cooked in the plainest manner; which, with bread or rice, and a tin pint of tea, baled out of a camp kettle, formed the homely but substantial repast. Around the inside the tent we all squatted in the true oriental style, and every one ate with an excellent appetite. At sunset we had a repetition of the same fare, and sometimes (let not the Temperance Society startle) when there was nothing particular doing, we indulged in a cup of punch, and songs and glees frequently concluded the labours of the day.

Every Sabbath, during the time that the German Missionaries remained with us, divine service was held twice a day.

After remaining about a fortnight at Philippolis, the Doctor, in the mean time, having come to the resolution of proceeding up the Caledon River, we (Messrs. M—— and C——, the Indian gentlemen that accompanied the Expedition from Cape Town, with Mr. G—— of the 98th, and myself) prepared to start in the direction of Lattakoo †; Mr. M——, who accompanied us from Graaff-Reinet, having returned a few days before. Mr. M—— had engaged a Griqua guide to accompany us as far as Lattakoo; but when we were ready to start the fellow was not to be found. On our departure, every man of the Expedition turned out

\* The gentleman above named, the Indians, familiarly termed the *Lattakoo Expedition*, the German Missionaries, and myself.

† Litakou of the Map.

in line, and honoured us with a grand salute. Big Harry, the butcher, was on the right of the line, with his large elephant gun, which gave a report like a cannon; and his appearance alone would, I think, frighten a host of Caffers. On the whole, the party on this occasion had a very noble and formidable appearance, and seemed perfectly capable of defending themselves against any number of enemies they might have to encounter for some time. Three cheers followed the salute, and the worthy Dr. and Captain E—— were pleased to accompany us about a couple of miles on our way; and after a mutual passing of hearty good wishes for one another's welfare and success, we stammered out the sorrowful "farewell!"

Four days' travelling brought us to the Riet River; but the country through which we passed, not only from Philippolis, but all the way from Graaff-Reinet, was in such a miserable condition from the long-continued droughts, that our cattle were in the greatest danger of perishing, as not a blade of vegetation was any where to be seen.

Here we found a number of Boors from the Colony, in search of pasturage for their cattle. These poor people were dreadfully dejected, as their flocks and herds were diminishing every day in considerable numbers, and they knew not which way to turn themselves to save their only means of subsistence. To return to their places, ruin stared them in the face; and to remain where they now were was little better, so that if Providence did not soon send rains, their losses must be very considerable indeed. It has been reported of those people, that they have fled from the Colony with the double view of dispossessing the Griquas of their places, and of evading the Government measures for the emancipation of their slaves. Nothing can be more untrue. The majority of those crossing the boundaries are of the

poor class, not possessing a slave, or the younger branches of richer families, who take charge of their flocks, while their elders and slaves remain at home to cultivate their places, very few slaves comparatively being used as herdsmen.

As regards the other charge, instead of the Boors oppressing the Griquas or Bastards, their arrival in the country of the latter is hailed by the generality of those people as an event fraught with good fortune to them; for having large places, and little or no cattle to graze there, and as "they plough not, neither do they sow," they take care to make the Boors pay a good price for every privilege they enjoy the moment they cross their boundaries.

That there may be single instances of the Boors maltreating the Griquas I will readily allow, but the majority of them treat them with kindness and humanity, being often the means of saving whole families from starvation, when the indolent parents are too lazy to exert themselves on behalf of their own offspring. That there are instances of industry among those people I am also ready to admit, but they are "few and far between;" the great body of them loitering their time away in their filthy hovels, which swarm with vermin, living in the most abject state of squalid poverty, supported solely by the exertions of a few wretched Bechuanas or Bushmen, who drag out a most miserable existence under the most intolerable *slavery*, in procuring for the subsistence of their indolent and supercilious masters roots, locusts, or honey. This is a species of slavery that the abolitionists are probably unacquainted with, and exists to a considerable degree through all the Griqua country. They obtain them when out on hunting, or on predatory excursions in the interior, and I have more than once been eye-witness to the cruel and degrading manner in which they treat the unfortunate Bechuanas.

As my Indian friends were bound to Lattakoo by the

way of Campbell, and as you are aware of the engagement I was under to procure Giraffes, Rhinoceroses, &c., I was here reluctantly obliged to part with these amiable and worthy gentlemen; my nearest route to the country where such animals could be procured being by Bootchaap, where, I was also informed, I should procure better grazing for my cattle.

Some days after we parted, two of my Hottentots absconded, when I was under the necessity of hiring a good-for-nothing fellow of a Griqua in their stead; but he did not annoy me long, for after a few days' good feeding, he followed the example of his predecessors, by running away. I afterwards had the good fortune to meet with a Bastard from Camiesberg, called Hendrik Klaas, who obligingly offered to drive one of my waggons, until I could supply myself with another driver. This man was on his way to the same country that I intended visiting, on a hunting excursion, and his waggon was two days farther down the Riet River, at which place he expected to be joined by a large party of Griquas, with several waggons; and as there was a number of spare people, he had no doubt that I should be able to procure as many as I wanted for the journey. This I considered a very fortunate circumstance for me, as I should be enabled at an easy rate to purchase any skins of rare animals which they might shoot along the road.

We did not, however, meet all the party till we reached the Modder River, where the Griquas mustered two waggons in addition to the one of Hendrik Klaas; so we were in all, with my two, five waggons. I hired also one man, Barend Barends (not the chief of that name), with his three riding horses, in the capacity of a hunter and marksman, and his brother, Hans Barends, as a leader, so that I promoted one of my Hottentots to the drivership.

We then jogged merrily on, the country improving as we reached the Vaal River, which we crossed a little below the forsaken Missionary Station of Platberg. Here I obtained some splendid additions to my ornithological collections. The country we found completely uninhabited all the way from Modder River to Poccanna, only having met two or three Griquas and a few Bechuanas at Bootchaap. Poccanna is a beautiful place, the country around it abounding in game of all sorts, with an abundance of fine grass, and the plains and hills covered with beautiful clumps of camel-thorns, and other trees of the mimosa family. Here we found several kraals of Corannas\*, who appeared to have a good stock of cattle, and plenty of milk. The kaross among them appeared to have given place to leather jackets and trowsers, and some even enjoyed the luxury of a shirt, but which is never washed from the time it is put on till worn out. Most of them possess fire-arms and horses, which they not only use in the chase, but, like their Griqua neighbours, occasionally in their predatory excursions against the Bechuanas and other unprotected tribes. One day's journey from Poccanna is a place called Towné, situated on the Hart River, at present the residence of a once powerful Baharutsu chief, called Makhatla, with a few of his tribe. This man was once, I am told, very rich, and resided in the capital of his kingdom, called by Campbell Kurrechane, but was driven thence some time ago by the all-conquering Zoola chief, Masilikatsie †, who has now made that place his head-quarters. Leaving the Hart River, we passed the ruins of a very extensive Bechuana town, its numerous stone kraals being still in a good state of repair, though it was forsaken by its inhabitants on the irruption of the Mantatees,

\* Koranas of the Map.

† Matacatzee of the Map.

about twelve years ago. Near to this place we found two other kraals of Corannas, under a chief called Tatema, who being, as the Griquas informed me, an excellent marksman and shot, I hired, along with three of his people, to accompany me in that capacity. Two days afterwards I was surprised to find that we had been joined by upwards of twenty more Corannas, with a number of horses, pack-oxen, &c., all followers of Captain Tatema; and as they had so much the appearance of banditti, I dreaded that, if their object was not to rob me, they might at least cause suspicions of hostile intentions to the tribes through whose country we had to pass. However, they behaved themselves very well, and I never had the least cause of complaint against my Coranna auxiliaries.

After travelling from Towné nine days, in a northeasterly direction, through a country only remarkable for its great sameness of appearance, consisting generally of immense flats, studded with camel-thorn trees, a sandy soil with a substratum of lime, plenty of grass, but no streams or fountains, only a few miserable pools, scarcely sufficient to supply the few straggling wild beasts and quaggas which we occasionally saw, we reached what is dignified with the name of the *Seechagholie River*, where I may say our operations of hunting only commenced.

Our first day's hunt was very successful, having bagged amongst us fourteen camelopards and two elands, and caught one camelopard calf, so that I had a great choice of skins and skeletons for preservation, for I never preserved any but the finest specimens. Our second day's sport was varied by the accession of some white and black rhinoceroses, and the capture of a half-grown giraffe. This beautiful creature had two large sores on its shoulder, evidently caused by the paws of a lion, which latter brute, from their situation, must have been on the back of this gigantic but



harmless creature. It unfortunately stumbled as we were pulling it to the waggons, and in its fall broke its neck. But I must not trouble you with all the particulars of our *jagt*; suffice it to say, that shortly after leaving the Seechagholie, the two Griqua waggons, with all the Corannas, returned homewards, being afraid of approaching nearer to the country of Masilikatsie. Taking a westerly course from Seechagholie, we hunted some time at a *dry* river called the Malybana, down which we travelled two days, till where it empties itself into the before-mentioned river. Our course was again north-easterly, after re-crossing the Seechagholie, near its junction with the Meritzan, all of which rivers empty themselves a few days' journey lower down into the Maloppo.

I have hitherto said nothing about the inhabitants of the country through which we passed since leaving the Hart; for until we first reached the Seechagholie, we had scarcely ever seen any, except a straggling Bushman or Bechuana, but after we had shot such abundance of game we got plenty of company. The natives scattered about this part of the country are the remains of various Bechuana tribes, such as the Baharutsie, Wanketzie, and Barolongs, all of whose countries Masilikatsie has conquered. These poor people live in very small communities, scattered over the face of the country, but have not a single head of cattle to live by, their whole dependance and only food being locusts, or such game as chance may direct into their pitfalls. I met among them some Wanketzie people, who recognized me as having visited their country about eight years ago. They told me that the once-powerful king Sibigho was now nearly reduced to beggary by Masilikatsie, and had taken refuge beyond the Kaliharry\* desert.

“My party now consisted of Jan Saver, a colonial youth,

\* Bakillharri of the Map.

myself, three colonial Hottentots, and two Griquas, with my two waggons, three horses, besides the three which I had hired from B. Barends. There was also Hendrik Klaas's waggon and party, which consisted of himself and Piet Barends, an adult Griqua, with several lads, three boys, and two women.

As we were travelling along the south bank of the Meritzan, we observed the fresh spoor of some cattle, which must have crossed our route that very morning. This being such an unusual circumstance, as I have before mentioned that the people inhabiting that country possessed no cattle, it caused as much surprise and conjecture among us as the print of a man's foot in the sand did to Robinson Crusoe; and as we were still debating on the subject, some of the natives came up and told us that a small commando from Makhatla, the Baharutsie chief, had that very morning returned from Masilikatsie, and having killed the herdsman, succeeded in carrying away seventeen head of cattle, with which they were now on their way home. This was bad news for us, as we guessed that Masilikatsie's people, in following the spoor of the stolen cattle, would come upon our waggons, and naturally suppose that we were connected with the thieves. When we reached the outspan place, we immediately began to make a sort of fortification of bushes around our waggons, in which we could keep our cattle and horses, in case of an attack during the night. We put our arms in order, and I gave to each man about thirty rounds of powder and ball, and took every other precaution that our circumstances would admit of. But we were attacked by nothing during the night but a tremendous thunder-storm, with plenty of rain, which was much more acceptable to us than Masilikatsie's soldiers would have been. The Griqua, Piet Barends, who very coolly told me that he had been frequently into Masilikatsie's country to *steal cattle*, said he

thought we had nothing to fear now, as that chief would think it below his dignity to send in pursuit of such a trifling number as seventeen head of cattle.

We continued our journey still in a north-easterly direction, till we reached the Maloppo, which was only six hours, on horseback, from the residence of Masilikatsie, but I could not induce the Griquas to advance one step farther. I tried everything in my power to get one to accompany me on horseback, as interpreter, but to no purpose, as I guessed that that powerful chief would not be pleased if he heard of our being so close to him, without paying him a visit. After remaining at the Maloppo three days, in which time we had bagged a good number of rhinoceroses, &c., and caught six beautifully-striped quaggas, we made preparations for returning, on which I missed my Griqua leader, Hans Barends. On making inquiry about him, nobody knew where he was, and as he was a lazy, sleepy fellow at the best, I paid little attention to the circumstance at the time, but spanned in and started, thinking that he might be asleep behind some bush, and would follow, as he had frequently done before. However, after we had travelled about an hour, Jan Saver came and informed me, to my utter astonishment, that Hans had absconded along with Piet Barends, and two Griqua lads, to steal cattle from Masilikatsie. I immediately ran to Hendrik Klaas, and upbraided him with a knowledge of the fact, blaming him for concealing it from me. He excused himself by saying that he had done everything in his power to dissuade him from going, but he would not listen to his advice, nor did he think that I should have been able to have dissuaded him. He also denied strenuously any pre-knowledge of Hans Barends' intended elopement, or of his taking his brother Barends' horse with him, which was the fact. I was now, to

use a homely expression, completely put to my shifts, for here were four people who had actually left my waggons for the purpose of plundering one of the most formidable chiefs in Southern Africa, and should they succeed, and return on my waggon track, there could be little doubt as to what the consequences would be. Hendrik Klaas in some measure comforted me, by saying that Piet Barends would never be so foolish as to return on our track, as he had left his son, a boy of eight years old, with the waggon. His opinion was, that Barends would take quite a different route, and consequently the waggons would be in no danger of being overtaken by his pursuers. I felt myself, however, in a very unpleasant situation, and that my safest plan was to hasten homewards with as little delay as possible.

After three days good riding on this side of the Maloppo, thinking ourselves out of reach of Masilikatsie, we rested at a beautiful *vley*, where there was abundance of fine grass and water, for the purpose of commencing fresh hostilities against the camelopards and rhinoceroses; and having heard nothing of Piet Barends and his band in all that time, we concluded that they must have been all murdered by Masilikatsie, which would have been their just deserts.

As I now draw near to the catastrophe which was the result of this marauding expedition, I must be particular in stating every circumstance as it happened. Jan Saver and my Griqua huntsman, Barend Barends, along with Hendrik Klaas, went out a hunting on the 17th November; the two latter returned in the afternoon without success, having lost Saver, who galloped off after a herd of quaggas, which they did not think it worth while to pursue. A little before sunset, I sent a Hottentot out on horseback in quest of him, as I was uneasy at his long stay; but the Hottentot returned without any tidings of

him. We kept firing signals all the evening, but still no sign of Saver. Next morning, the 18th, I despatched Hendrik Klaas and Barend Barends in quest of him, with orders to follow his horses' spoor from the place they had last seen him, as I dreaded that he might have fallen into one of the numerous pitfalls which the natives make for catching game. Saver, however, returned about nine o'clock, and told me that he had lost his way last night, and finding a pool of water, and good grazing for his horse, he tied the latter to a tree, under which he himself slept, and this morning had much difficulty in finding the waggons, on account of there being no hills or other conspicuous objects to guide the bewildered traveller to any fixed point. About an hour after Saver's arrival, the weather being extremely hot, I was sitting without my jacket, reading in my waggon, when looking up the valley, I perceived Hendrik Klaas coming down at full gallop, all the way making signs to us, which I could not comprehend; but thinking probably that he had caught some giraffes, and wanted assistance, I ordered the horses, which were fortunately close at hand, to be caught and saddled. The next moment he was with us, vociferating as loud as he could, "Get your guns and horses ready, for here is Masilikatsie close upon us!" I looked up the valley, and saw a dense black body of men moving furiously down upon us. No time was to be lost, I snatched my double-barrel from the side of the waggon, and girt on my bandalier, cast a hurried glance into my front chest in search of my money and papers, in case of the worst, but did not find them in the hurry. Barend Barends followed close at the heels of Hendrik Klaas, and quickly *shipped* the two Griqua women on his spare horse. My Hottentot Piet took to his heels, along with the women and Griqua boys, and escaped into the adjoining wood.

Klaas, a cowardly fellow, also one of my Hottentots, got on horseback and fled, so that we had left to protect the waggons, and fight against about two hundred of the most formidable savages in South Africa, Jan Saver, Hendrik Klaas, Barend Barends, and myself. Old Prins, a little dwarfish Hottentot, was the only one of my people that did not run away, and being on foot, had a very narrow escape from being taken by the savages.

We were now all mounted, and at that critical moment, when the Matebely (for that is the name of Masilikatsie's tribe) were within two hundred yards of us, I perceived the villain Piet Barends making the best of his way towards the waggons, but coming in an opposite direction to the Caffers; his horse completely knocked-up, and his face as pale as death. I had scarcely time to upbraid the monster with his base conduct, when the Matebely were close upon us; for it was all done quicker than you can read this description. They now spread out to surround the waggons, seeing which, I rode up closer to their line, making signs to them to come to parley, but without avail. A shower of assagais made me seek safety in retreat. Their right wing seized our cattle and sheep, and as they had nearly surrounded us, our little band burst through the weakest part of the circle, when we turned round and fired upon them. They succeeded, however, in driving us away from the waggons, and forced us into a wood of camel-thorns, which was far from being advantageous ground for our small party, so that I considered it good generalship to retreat to a more open and rising ground, on this side of Seechagholie. In the running fire which we kept up on them during our retreat, we killed three, and wounded one. They seemed to be aware of the advantage we had gained by our retreat, and a few crossed the river to follow us, although a great number got

into its bed, no doubt with a view of being protected from our fire by its banks, and of having an opportunity of surrounding us on both sides, without our perceiving it. At one of the boldest fellows we fired, I think, six shots, neither of which struck him, although one ball went through his shield, and another struck the ground just between his feet. On the other wing, however, Hendrik Klaas shot one dead, which, whether from the circumstance, probably of his being a chief, I am unable to say, but after that they seemed to have no further inclination to advance. Those that were on this side the river recrossed it, and then the whole body turned their shields on their backs and quietly returned to our waggons. We now drew together, my Hottentot Klaas also getting courage to join us, and resolved to go in search of the Hottentot Piet, and the Griqua women and boys. In pursuance of this intention, we had proceeded down the left bank of the river but a little way, when a dense smoke arising from the spot where our waggons stood, made us fear that they had set fire to them. A little more careful attention to that subject convinced us of the truth of our suspicions, for the three different fires answered exactly to the relative position of our three waggons. On reaching a Bechuana kraal about four miles below where our skirmish had taken place, we found the miserable inhabitants, in great consternation, preparing to flee, for to be found there by the Matebely they knew would be certain death, those cruel wretches murdering every tribe through whose country they may carry their arms. These people confirmed our suspicions with regard to their burning the waggons, as one of them had just returned from the wood in whose vicinity they stood. Here we, with difficulty, each obtained a mouthful of dirty water, and got the pleasing tidings that our *infantry* had passed that kraal only a little

before us; we soon found their spoor, and in an hour came up with the poor creatures, resting themselves under a tree. The women told us that the villain Barends, the cause of all our misfortunes, had taken the horse that they were mounted on from them, and getting upon it himself, along with his little son, galloped off and left them to their fate. Two of the Griqua boys were still missing, nor have I ever been able to learn what became of them.

As I had now no chance of ever obtaining anything more from my waggons, I resolved on making the best of our way homewards, the fruits of all my labours for many months being lost at one blow, as my splendid collection of natural history, a great part of which would have been quite new to the cabinets of the curious, was now, without doubt, consigned to the flames. However, to repine at one's fate avails nothing; besides, I think it unmanly, so

“I whistled up ‘Lord Lennox’ March,  
To keep my spirits cheerie.”

My loss in waggons, cattle, books, instruments, and many other valuable articles I had with me, cannot be less estimated than at Rds. 6000, and as I had every prospect of making a profitable journey, I cannot compute my total loss at less than 11 or 12,000 Rds. No trifle for a poor devil like myself!

We commenced our homeward journey, walking and riding alternately, as we had not near sufficient horses for the whole party, and we jogged on as merrily as our unfortunate circumstances would admit of. We had no guide or track to lead us to any place of rest, but taking a south-westerly course, trusted to Providence to lead us to Mateto, the nearest missionary station.

The day was excessively hot, but the sun set upon us



without any appearance of water, and now in the strictest silence we pursued our dreary way through the long grass and low thorny bushes with which this country is covered, not knowing but our enemies might be close behind us. About ten o'clock we saw a light which we approached with great caution, being ignorant whether it was made by friend or foe. Having first reconnoitred, we found to our joy that it was a Bechuana kraal; to our eager cries of "*Se weitoe!*" "give us some water;" the women stowed themselves away in their huts, and the men flew to their assagais and battle-axes, for they knew not what to think of our untimely visit and picturesque appearance. But after some explanation of our mishap, some dirty ostrich egg-shells were handed to us, containing a mixture of mud and water, which had it been Hodgson's *pale ale*, could not have been sucked out quicker or with more relish. These poor people, on hearing of the Matebely, prepared immediately to decamp, and one of them shewed us a small dirty pool about a mile from their huts, which supplied them with water. Here we saddled off for a few minutes, (keeping a good look out all the time,) to let our poor horses drink, as they had had no water all day.

The moon getting up, we resumed our monotonous journey, and after travelling many a weary mile, we frequently stood still to listen for the cheering strains of some amorous frog, which, in our present forlorn situation, was likely to be our only index to water; for our thirst was still unassuaged, notwithstanding the copious draughts we had inhaled from the Bechuana egg-shells and the dirty contents of the pool. The sweet music of the frogs, however, never reached our ears, and at dawn of day we laid down under a bush completely exhausted from fatigue and thirst. Half an hour's nap revived us a little, and we again pro-

ceeded, but whither, we scarcely knew ourselves. We were just debating upon which way we should steer our course, when to our astonishment we heard the crack of a waggon whip. "Gracious heaven!" I cried, "the hand of Providence is in this!" I jumped upon my horse and galloped off in the direction of the sound, although as yet I saw nothing, but I fired my gun to make them lay to, as they had evidently gone far past us. At last I caught a glimpse of two waggons, and made sure it was my friends of the African expedition. In that I was, however, mistaken; for it turned out to be a Mr. Gibson, a trader, on his way to Masilikatsie. Glad of an opportunity of saving a fellow creature's life, I in a few words explained our situation to him, and the danger he was in of proceeding any farther in the present state of things. He heard me coolly out, and then said, that Masilikatsie must certainly have thought that we were all Griquas, for he knew that Chief, and could not suppose for a moment that he would otherwise have attacked white people. Mr. G. had also three of the Matebely with him, one of whom had been in the Colony with him, and they were all of the same opinion as their master. I replied, that they probably might at first have mistaken us for Griquas, but to obviate that mistake, Jan Saver and myself purposely exposed ourselves in front of their line, before the attack commenced. Gibson, however, persisted in his determination to go on, at all risks, making sure that they would never attack him while he had their countrymen in his waggons.

As there was still no sign of water, we accompanied the waggons to the place where they intended spanning-out, which was still two hours farther, that we might obtain some refreshments, having had nothing to eat the whole of the preceding day and night. On our reaching the out-

span place, however, not a drop of water was to be found! Mr. G. then insisted on us going with him as far as the upper part of the Seechagholie, where we would be sure to find water, but I could not think of going so far out of our way. A small sheep was hastily killed for my party, and one for the Griquas, a part of which we grilled without salt as that would only increase our thirst. Of the little drop of water that still remained in his keg, Mr. G. made us a cup of coffee, so that we had a breakfast as sumptuous as it was unexpected. He then gave us some important directions regarding the road to Mateto, without which we never should have found our way thither.

As Gibson's oxen had now travelled twenty-eight hours without water, and as no time was to be lost by either party, we each prepared for resuming our journey. I had the mutton put into the skin of the sheep, and then fastened on one of the horses, as I did not intend riding to day, but spare the poor animals for the journey across the desert which yet lay between us and Mateto.

About nine o'clock in the morning we parted\*, and although the night had been cold and chilly, which I felt the more as being without a jacket, the sun began already to be insufferably hot. Barends and Klaas rode on in advance to the Great Chue, which is the name of the fountain where we would first find water, as they could not stand against the thirst any longer. Jan Saver, and myself, were the foremost of our pedestrian band, and my spirits were so elated at our good fortune in having met with Gibson, and getting such timely refreshments, that I could not resist the impulse of beguiling some heavy hours in cross-

\* Mr. Gibson was kind enough to offer us various other articles of refreshment, besides the mutton mentioned above, but which we had neither the means of cooking nor carrying with us.

ing the dreary plain we were now upon by singing some of our sprightliest Scottish songs. I soon found, however, that my vocal exertions were not well adapted for assuaging my thirst, which now began to be rather pressing, so I changed that amusement, some time after, for the more uncongenial one of chewing some of the leaden ball which remained in my girdle pouch, as I had often heard that lead is a great palliation of thirst. Our journey still continued over an extensive sandy plain which left the horizon as level and unbroken as on the bosom of the trackless ocean, and its natural dreariness was greatly enhanced by the myriads of young locusts which literally covered it, and completely changed its colour. Not a bush or other object could we see to protect us for a moment from the scorching rays of a vertical sun; but the *mirage* flickering in the distance, shewed us extensive lakes of clear blue water, which, ever and anon, as we approached, vanished, and

“ Left not a wrack behind !”

Our situation now became anything but enviable, and I would have given anything to have got rid of the burden of my gun and bandalier. Our feet began to get completely toasted in the burning sand, cracked and bled profusely, while our mouths became as dry as a *furnace*, rendering it rather dangerous to converse with one another. We were surprised that the Griquas, who had rode out before us, did not come to our assistance with some water, as they had promised to fill the sheep's paunch with that valuable element, and meet us on the way. However, on at last reaching the spring, more dead than alive, we found that they had only arrived but a few minutes before us, their horses being quite spent. One of them was just filling the paunch with water, and immediately trudged off with it on his shoulder to the aid of the poor woman and Hottentots,

still about an hour behind us. I was afraid that we should have injured ourselves with the immense quantity of water which we drank; but no evil effects followed. We found the springs here so small, that no more than one horse could drink at a time; after which we were obliged to let it fill again before another could be supplied. About an hour's rest under a small bush considerably revived us, and after eating a small *carbonatje*, we again proposed to resume our journey. Gibson had informed us that, after leaving this plain, we should find no water for twenty-four hours, so I filled our sheep's paunch, which I balanced across one of my horses' backs with the mutton still remaining in the sheep skin. An empty bottle which we also got from Mr. G. was filled, and with that supply, I trusted, by travelling all night, to be able to cross the desert without danger. Saver and my Hottentots were very much opposed to crossing this desert, wishing by all means to continue with the Griquas, who were bent upon returning by the same way they had come, which was by the Hart River; but I was well aware of the danger of going that way, knowing that by that route we should find nobody for some weeks but Bechuanas, Corannas, or Griquas, from whom I am convinced we should have obtained no food, deprived as we were of the means of purchasing it from those who might have it: but the most of them have nothing but locusts, a sort of food I had not much relish for; whereas, if we took the way to Mateto, with the exertion of two days and nights' hard travelling, we should be certain to find *Christian Missionaries*, by whom I was sure all our wants would be bountifully supplied.

Our horses were all ready saddled, when on looking in the direction whence we had come, we saw a person slowly advancing on horseback;—it was Cobus, the son of the

villain Barends, who had just effected his escape from the country of Masilikatsie. The lad looked dreadfully emaciated, and had suffered incredibly from hunger and thirst. His horse was also completely knocked up. He told us that he had been separated from his father, and the rest of the gang, the same night that they attacked Masilikatsie's cattle-kraal, and he had never seen or heard any thing of them since. How he escaped appears to be a miracle, as he informed us that a large commando, in addition to the one that attacked us, had been sent out after them, and they were now following up the traces of our waggons, as we had *entered* the country, doubtless, with the intention of discovering the place whence we came, which in all probability would lead them to attack some of the kraals about Poccana or Towné.

The sun was now set, and it was time for us to march. We wished the Griquas a prosperous journey, and Saver, myself and the three Hottentots commenced our dreary task. We had but just emerged from a bushy height which bounds the Great Chue on the west, when we were overtaken by one of the most terrible thunder-storms that ever poor sinners were out in. We were on an immense naked plain, the complete counterpart to that we had suffered so much on in the former part of the day from heat and thirst, but we pushed on in hopes of soon finding a bush to shelter ourselves under. The vivid flashes of lightning, which followed one another in quick succession, showed us something on the verge of the horizon, that appeared to be a thick bush, and to it we hurried with all speed, but found that, like the *mirage* in the morning, it had vanished at our approach, for it was nothing more than some low scrubby thorns not above six inches in height; which, on account of the darkness of the colour compared to the grassy plains,

had given them in the bright blaze of the lightning the appearance of a thick and comfortable bush. We still advanced, and were frequently deceived in the same manner, but the rain continuing to fall in such torrents, and the wind being right *a-head* of us, the Hottentots positively refused advancing any farther; so I was forced to sit down with them on the bleak exposed heath, holding the bridles of our horses in our hands, there being no place to tie them to, and allow the rain to fall upon us without the least protection in the world. The thunder and lightning became actually terrific, and it frequently appeared as if the earth would have split under us; but, as I am no hand at description, I shall leave it to your own imagination to paint what our sufferings must have been that night. After sitting in that position till our limbs became quite stiff, we huddled together as close as we could, and laid down in the mire. The "windows of heaven" were still open, and the "waters of the great deep" seemed to be let down upon us. About two hours before day-light, I with much difficulty got upon my legs again, and finding that the rain did not in the least abate, I insisted upon my fellow-sufferers also rising, which they did with great reluctance, apparently preferring to die there to the fatiguing exertions of marching forward in the rain. It was a fortunate circumstance that I insisted on their moving when I did, or they must all inevitably have perished from stoppage of the circulation of blood. They all found themselves in the same predicament as myself, which was, being unable to stand upright, and our legs refusing to perform their accustomed functions. However, our case was desperate, and we tottered, rather than walked forward, leading our horses behind us. Every dozen of paces we stopped to breathe, although the rain still fell in torrents, and had scarcely proceeded half a mile, when

we found the blood beginning to resume its circulation, and we began to walk with much more ease to ourselves. It was a dreary journey, but with the dawn, the rain began to abate a little, and we had the cheering prospect at the extremity of the plain to see what we were convinced was a *real* bush. This put "life and mettle in our heels," and we had soon the unspeakable satisfaction to find that it was actually two large *Karee* trees, with large pools of rain-water around them, and plenty of fire-wood. But how to strike a light seemed to be the next difficulty, for none of us had a tinder-box. Our guns would have answered that purpose tolerably well, but to find a dry rag that would ignite in the pan puzzled us. I tried a bit of my shirt, but it was as wet as everthing else about our persons; but by the greatest good luck one of our Hottentots had preserved a small bag of gunpowder in his girdle quite dry, a bit of which answered our purpose extremely well, and after a good deal of puffing and blowing we had the pleasure once more of seeing a fire. The sight of the bright blaze made us in a great measure forget our sufferings of the past night, though it did not remove the pain from our bones, which continued many days after, and which, in all probability, will frequently return in the shape of rheumatisms, to remind us in our old days of the hardships we have undergone in crossing the Chue desert.

After a refreshing sleep under the *Karee* trees, we resumed our journey, but one of our horses *giving up*, we were obliged to leave him behind; sorry indeed to leave such a trusty and faithful servant, who had saved my life, to its certain fate of being devoured by the lions. We rode and walked by turns all this day, our progress being very slow, on account of the stiffness of our limbs. Indeed I had forgotten to say, that, when daylight appeared, our skins pre-



sented the same appearance that those of drowned persons have after lying several hours under water, and were consequently exceedingly tender. This day turned out to be as hot as yesterday ; but as we had plenty of rain-water on the road, and bushes where we could occasionally shelter ourselves from the burning rays of the sun, our sufferings were but trifling in comparison.

As the heavy watery clouds seemed to portend another rainy night, we chose for ourselves a comfortable bush at sunset, that we might not be exposed to a repetition of the hardships of the preceding night. We felt hungry, and on rummaging our larder, found, to our dismay, that the skin bag containing the meat having been carelessly tied, its contents had been lost on the way ; all but a piece of the sheep's neck bones. This was quickly consigned to the embers and devoured amongst us. We then *turned in*, as the sailors say, intending to start again should the weather permit, as soon as the moon got up, which would be about midnight. However, we overslept ourselves, and in all probability should have slept till daylight, had not three or four lions, who were amusing themselves, given us a *hail*. It might be about two o'clock, for I had no watch, having left that useful instrument in the waggon when attacked, and it probably now dangles at the ear of the mightiest of South African kings. It soon after commenced raining, as we had expected ; but we took shelter in the nearest bush, where we lay about two hours, when the rain abating a little we jogged on again, but soon lost our road among some large pools of water, and looked for it in vain till daylight appeared. We discovered that we had gone a good deal too much to the right, and in looking for our way (Providence again!) we found an ostrich egg. What a glorious prize for poor creatures in our con-

dition! A little afterwards we saw some fresh traces of cattle, which we followed till they led us to a Bechuana kraal in a very secluded situation. Seeing here a lot of calves, we expected to have got some milk, which would have been to us the greatest luxury.

On begging for some, for we could not buy it, they all denied having any, but I searched several of their huts till I found one in which were suspended from the roof three large skin sacks of milk. I seized upon one of them without ceremony, and was about helping myself, when the owner flew at me with the savageness of a tiger, and wrenched the bag out of my hands, refusing to give me a drop without payment. This was a specimen of African hospitality, of which I have seen several more in the course of my travels, and the very thing I dreaded would befall me if I had gone by the Hart River. However, they were kind enough to lend us a small earthen pot to boil our ostrich egg in, and on it we made an excellent breakfast, although without bread or salt.

Near to this kraal we found the track of Gibson's wagons, on which we continued till we reached the Little Chue, which is like the other place of the same name, a periodical lake, having all the appearance of a salt-pan, but almost always without water, except some small springs on one side.

Here we left our Hottentots behind, and rode on to Mateto, which was still distant about thirty miles. At sunset we reached the extensive Bechuana town of Litakoou, the residence of the Batlapee Chief, Mahura, who is brother to Matabee, the king of that tribe, whose former residence, you know, was in Kuruman, or as it is commonly called Lattakoo. Here we procured a guide to Mateto, which we reached about ten o'clock at night; and from the very warm and

hospitable reception which we received from the Missionaries, Messrs. Lemue and Rolland, and their kind-hearted ladies, I guessed that our sufferings on this journey were drawing to a close.

During the four days that we remained with those worthy people, we received every attention to our comforts and wants that children could expect from their parents under such circumstances; Mr. Lemue kindly supplying us from his wardrobe with everything which our distressed situation required; and when we left them they would not suffer us to fatigue our horses to Kuruman, but sent their waggons with us to that place, which is two days' journey from Mateto.

To the excellent and intelligent Missionary, the Rev. Mr. Moffat, of Kuruman and his lady, I am also under the greatest obligations for a repetition of the hospitalities that I received at Mateto, and also for sending their waggon along with me to Campbell, a distance of four long days' journey.

The improvements at Kuruman since my last visit are truly astonishing! There I found a printing-press in full activity, with a *native* compositor, taught by Mr. Moffat, who, you know, is an adept at everything. The Mission-houses and gardens are extremely neat, comfortable, and unassuming; but the new church is a stupendous work for the means which they have had of building it, and would do honour to any Christian community of much longer standing than the Missionary town of Kuruman. What pleased me much, both here and at Mateto, was to see large fields of yellow wheat belonging to the natives, vieing with the crops of the Missionaries, having been well cultivated and irrigated.

This is one grand step towards civilization, and, would my time permit, I could tell you many more. What a pity if Masilikatsie, or any such powerful chief, should one

day compel them to leave that delightful station! for if things go on as they have now done for some time, by allowing the Griquas to plunder not only Masilikatsie, but every one from whom they can steal a single cow, the consequence is not difficult to foresee.

When I reached Campbell, I wrote a few hurried lines to Dr. Smith, informing him of the danger of at present penetrating to the northward, as he must pass through Masilikatsie's territories before he can go to the northward of the Maloppo, except he goes by the coast of Natal, as the Kaliharry Desert will prevent his approach to the westward.

My friends are of opinion that if a full statement of my unfortunate case was laid before the Committee of the "Association," and by them submitted to Government, that something might be done which would be the means of obtaining restitution of my property, wantonly seized by the chief Masilikatsie; and insure to the "Expedition" a safe passage through his immense territories, and also put a stop to that marauding disposition of the Griquas, which must ultimately end to the disadvantage of the Colony.

With that view I have hastily drawn up the above details, as well as the want of my journal will allow, and trust that the Committee will do something in it, were it only to insure, as I have said before, a safe passage to the "Expedition."

It would be presumption in me to suggest what steps Government should take, but should they consider my misfortune, and the safety of the Expedition worthy of notice, I think a small embassy under a skilful officer, demanding restitution of my property, and protection to any other Colonist who may reach that country, would have the desired effect.

The Griqua Chief Cornelius Kok, of Campbell, said that if Government did so, he would give an escort of one hundred men. Adam Kok would, no doubt, give as many; and Waterboer, as a matter of course, would assist the Govern-

ment. Besides, assistance might also be obtained from the Bechuana Chief Mahura, as the Missionaries assured me.

My case I now leave in your hands ; well knowing that no exertions will be spared on your part to render every assistance in your power.

From Cornelius and Adam Kok I got two horses as far as this side of the Vaal River, and afterwards, with the aid of my own poor brutes, and some kind farmers on the road, I reached Graff-Reinet in five days, where I found it confidently reported that I had been murdered. I had been absent from home four months, and had been travelling three weeks from the time that the accident happened.

I have not heard a word about the Expedition since we parted, which a good deal surprises me ; but we are anxiously looking for information every day. When you write to the Doctor, impress on his mind the necessity of having a few more horses with the Expedition, as they are absolutely necessary, not only in case of a misfortune such as mine, but for the procuring a regular supply of game. I told the Doctor this before we parted, but from a praiseworthy motive of putting the Association to as little expense as possible, he had not, when I left him, purchased a single horse.

I trust you will overlook the manifold faults of this very lengthy epistle, should you ever reach the end of it, as I was so pushed for time, that I had not time to read it over and correct it.

I remain, my dear Sir,  
Your much obliged and obedient Servant,

A. G. BAIN.

To J. C. CHASE, ESQ.,  
*Secretary to the Association  
for exploring Central Africa.*

## APPENDIX, No. 2.

Wreck of the Grosvenor East Indiaman—An Expedition leaves the Colony in search of the survivors of the Wreck—Discover a party of Mulattoes, descendants of Europeans wrecked on the coast of Caffer-land about twenty years previous to the loss of that vessel—Rev. W. Shaw visits these people in 1828.

THE Grosvenor, East Indiaman, Captain Coxon, commander, was wrecked on the coast of Caffraria on the 4th of August, 1782.\* Several of the crew perished in attempting to gain the land, but the greater part were saved on a fragment of the wreck which drifted ashore. Those who escaped, amounting to one hundred and twenty-seven persons, among whom were three ladies, six children, and several gentlemen, passengers, set forward, August 7th, with the intention of travelling by land to the Cape of Good Hope, but being ignorant of the distance, and without provisions or guides to conduct them, they were bewildered in the trackless and inhospitable wastes, and it is feared were destroyed by the natives, or died of hunger and fatigue, excepting eight seamen, and one black woman-servant, who, after having experienced the most unparalleled distress for near four months, at length providentially succeeded in reaching the Cape.

In 1796, the ship "Hercules," an American vessel, Captain Stout, commander, was wrecked on the same coast, and the natives informed the Captain, that Captain Coxon of the Grosvenor, and the men with him, were slain in resisting the will of a Caffer Chief, who insisted on taking the two white ladies to his kraal. The Captain and his party, not being armed, were immediately destroyed. "The fate

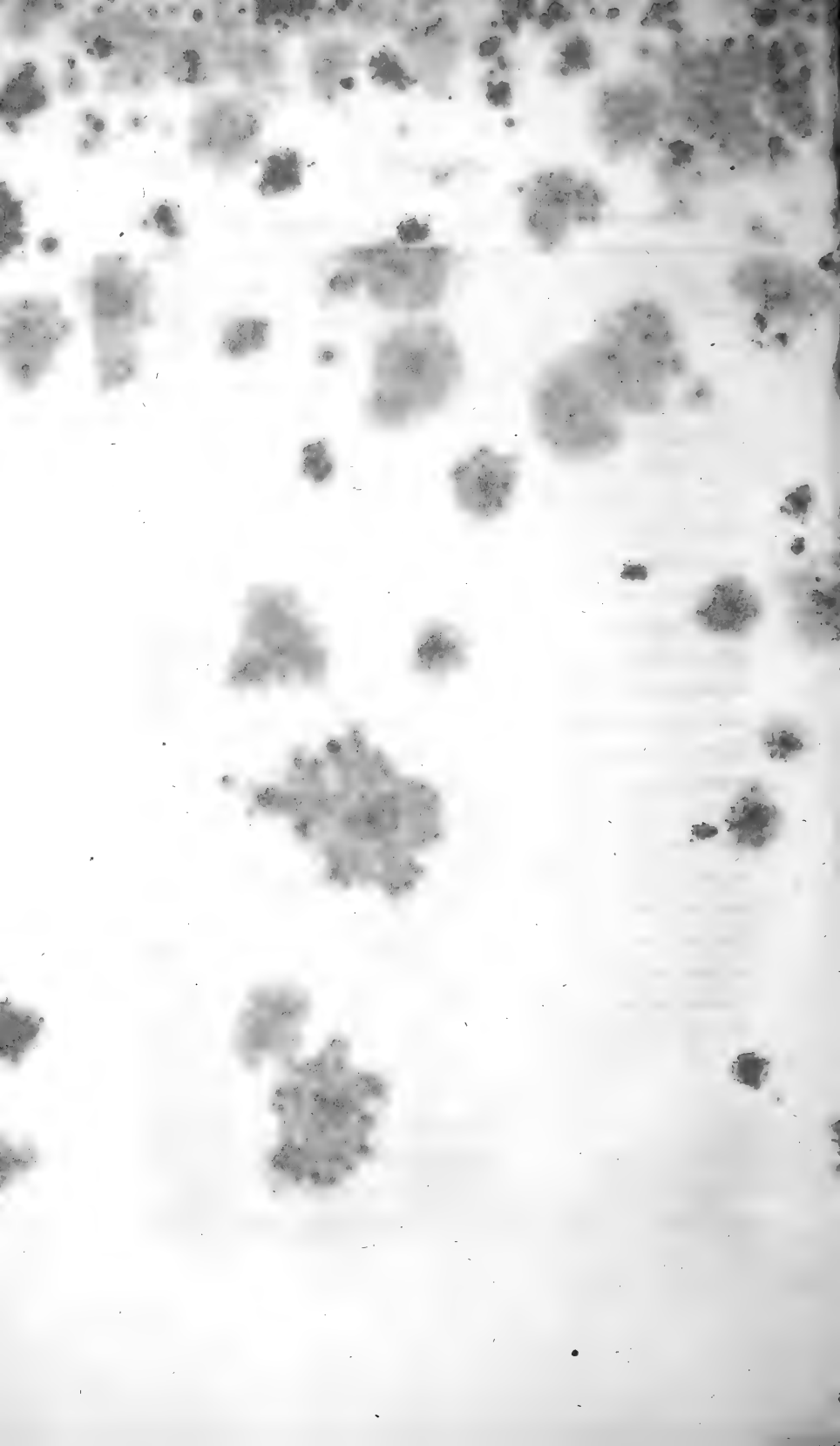
\* The accompanying plate of the wreck of the Grosvenor is from a painting by Smirke, published in 1784.



THE BEACH OF THE BAY OF PORT NATHAN, IN 1882

THE BEACH OF THE BAY OF PORT NATHAN, IN 1882

in 1882 on the Coast of Caffraria.





of the two unfortunate ladies," says Captain Stout, " gave me so much uneasiness, that I most earnestly requested them to tell me all they knew of their situation; whether they were alive or dead: they replied with apparent concern, that one of the ladies had died a short time after her arrival at the kraal; but they understood that the other was living, and had several children by the Chief, but ' Where she now is,' they said, ' we know not.' " \*

" Eight years after the wreck of the Grosvenor East India-man, upon the Caffrarian coast, an enterprising Cape colonist, of the name of Van Reenen, proceeded by the directions of the Dutch government, in 1790, in search of the survivors of that fatal catastrophe, but without success. On the Omgazyana, or Little Mogassie river, Van Reenen and his party fell in with a numerous tribe of mulattoes, the descendants of Europeans and Indians by intercourse with the natives; among them were three old white women, forced into marriage with the chiefs, who had been shipwrecked at a period long anterior to the loss of the Grosvenor. They appeared to be exceedingly agitated at seeing people of their own complexion and description, but seemed much delighted at the offer of Van Reenen to take them and their children back; from causes, however, hitherto unexplained, their deliverance was never effected. On the arrival of the exploratory party at the villages of this interesting race of mulattoes on the 4th of November, 1790, they made a great rejoicing, and cried out ' Our fathers are come !'

The long, long looked for day—the dawn  
 I have dreamed of many a night,  
 Hath broken on this blessed morn  
 With its visions of delight;  
 And every cherished fleeting form  
 Is now palpable to sight.

\* Captain Stout's Narrative, p. 55.

Come! let us leave this hated shore, where I must aye retain  
 My memory of sorrow, and my sense of sin and shame ;  
 For our long expected freedom—our day of joy 's begun ;  
 And we shall reach our lovely land, for at length ' our fathers come !'

Why art thou wailing at my breast,  
 My babe ?—and thou, my eldest born,—  
 My boy of guilt—yet happiness,  
 For thou sooth'dst me when forlorn ?  
 Why art thou plucking at my dress ?  
 Art thou wishing to be gone ?

Ah, no ! I read the reason, and it chills my heart to stone,  
 That thy native clime, my children, hath charms for thee alone ;  
 And I must seek my sepulchre beneath your southern sun,  
 For I cannot flee this fated land, although ' our fathers come !'

“ In 1828, the expedition under Major Dundas fell in with about seventy persons, descended from Europeans, on the banks of the Omtata river, near the sea. The account they gave of themselves was, as nearly as could be gathered, that they were wrecked about twenty years previous to the destruction of the Grosvenor, which some of them well remembered : they described the party landing from that vessel as ' like a nation coming out of the sea,' (it will be recollected that one hundred and twenty-six persons reached the shore,) but most of them were killed by the Amaponda captain, Faku's father. Of the party thus met by this expedition, they chiefly received the foregoing account from the daughter of an old woman who died about eight years before, whose name was ' Betsy ;' she further stated, that eleven men and two women were saved from the ship in which her mother had been embarked, and which was lost in the neighbourhood of Delagoa Bay ; that after the wreck the survivors proceeded towards the north, but subsequently settled among the Amapondas, the two women marrying chiefs of that nation : nothing more could at that time be gained from

this informant. John Cane, dispatched by Chaka with his ambassadors to the colonies in 1828, had frequently heard of some survivors of the wreck of the Grosvenor, and he thought he could recognise, in the Caffer corruptions of their names, those of Jeffry, Thomas, Michael, and Fortuin: he understood that the armourer died about 1824. The remains of the wreck which Cane had seen about forty miles east of the Omzimvooboo river, consist of ballast and guns, perceptible at low water; and there are in the rocks and sand at that place excavations and fissures called by the natives 'the white men's houses.' Longer details relative to the interesting tribe of mulattoes, for whom the sympathy of Europeans has been so long excited, will shortly be laid before the public.\*

The Rev. W. Shaw, accompanied by others, visited the tribe of mulattoes discovered by Van Reenen in 1790. The following particulars are from his journal, dated June 27, 1828.

27th June.—In pursuing our journey this day, we crossed the mouths of a number of rivers, some of which were deep, owing to the influence of the spring tides, and of course we got wet in fording them. The land near the beach in this neighbourhood is very high, and must have a very bold and bluff appearance from the sea. Several of the mountains near the beach are rich in iron ore. At the mouth of the Umpakoo river is a most singular mountain, well worthy the careful attention of any traveller skilled in geology. It is composed principally of iron ore, is of an irregular shape, with nearly perpendicular sides; it may be about one hundred yards long at the base, and thirty or forty yards high at the highest part: the waves of the sea dash against the southern side of the hill, whilst its northern side forms a sort of dam to the waters of the

\* South African Directory, 1830. Page 268.

river, which consequently collect and form a beautiful lagoon; but the object which immediately arrests the attention of the traveller in viewing this rock, is a singular excavation, which runs quite through from its northern to its southern side—thus forming a natural tunnel, which in height is about one-fourth of the altitude of the mountain, and wide enough to admit an ordinary-sized coal-barge. I never felt before such sensations of admiration on viewing a landscape, as those which I could not help indulging during the few minutes we halted to look at this spot: the undulatory hills on each side of the river, the lagoon at the foot of the iron mountain, the tremendous breakers incessantly roaring on the beach, and foaming through the perforation of the rock, the sun just setting, and on the opposite side of the horizon, the pale moon, having “filled her horn,” rising above the waters of the Southern Ocean, of which we had at the same moment an extensive view—formed altogether such a grand and beautiful constellation of objects, that I felt considerable regret in leaving the place. We saw very few people during this day’s ride, as our route lay very near the beach, and the few we saw informed us that the people in the neighbourhood were wandering about, in consequence of the consternation produced only a few days before by the ravages of the Fitkanie. After dark we arrived at a kraal, where were collected a large number of people, who were at first greatly alarmed at our approach, not knowing whether we were friends or enemies; but as some of them knew Lochenberg, who informed them we were missionaries, their fears immediately subsided. These people proved to belong to the tribe of Dapa\*, and informed us that the chief was not far distant, and that they were all returning to their homes. They supplied us with some boiled corn and beans, of which, with

\* The son of an European woman wrecked on the coast.

some tea which we had brought with us, we contrived to make a hearty supper; but from the number of natives who slept in the hut with us, our sleeping accommodations were rather worse than usual.

June 28th.—We proceeded a short distance, and found the chief, Dapa, at the Umnenga River, surrounded by a number of his clan, all apparently removing with their cattle. Dapa and his family were living among the bushes near the river: he is an infirm old man; his colour and features decidedly shew his European descent. He informed us, that two white men and his mother, who at that time was very young, were wrecked on the coast; one of the white men was the father of his mother; she was taken to wife by his own father, a native chief. He stated also, that his mother's father and the other white man married native women, which seems very probable, for the family has greatly branched out, and the colour of a number of these people prove the extent to which it has increased. Dapa's mother was wrecked, probably, eighty years ago; she died within the last fifteen years. We endeavoured to elicit from Dapa some information relative to the wreck of the Grosvenor, but his explanations on that subject were confused. He expressed great regret that the country was in such a state of confusion, and intimated his earnest wish that a missionary might be sent to his tribe as soon as the people were again settled.

Among other questions, we asked whether he would make his kraal near the place where a missionary (if one should be sent) would choose to build his village? He answered this by asking us what he should learn, or what he should be the better for the coming of a missionary, if he did not live near enough to hear his instructions. As the enemy had been within a short distance of where we now were, we

desired them to shew us the place where they had encamped: one of the men led us a short distance up the river, and shewed us several kraals or native villages, where the huts were burned down, and from which the marauders had taken away all the cattle, which formed the principal means of the people's subsistence. He shewed us the skeletons of two women who had been murdered by these freebooters: they also pointed out a spot at a short distance, where a skirmish had taken place between some of Dapa's people and the enemy, and where several men had been killed. This tribe, however, had not any general battle with the Fitkanie, but the Amaponda nation, under Umayki and Faku, had fought with them, and been worsted. The party of the enemy who crossed the Umtata river to the place where we saw the remains of their fires, are said to be only a small division of them; judging, however, from the number and size of their fires, they must have been a numerous body of people. They had only left this spot eight days before we arrived here. Having seen enough to impress our minds with a strong feeling of the horror of African warfare, and to induce the prayer, that the gospel may speedily produce peace among these nations, we proceeded to the large and beautiful river Umtata, where we saw two large herds of hippopotami, and as we had no flesh for ourselves or the people, Lochenberg shot one of them, and it was very good eating. The natives are very fond of the flesh of the hippopotamus, and we were glad, by means of Lochenberg's musket, thus to afford them, in their present distressing circumstances, quite a feast. It was amusing to see the dexterity and rapidity with which they cut up, into more than a hundred pieces, the immense carcase of this animal, which though not full grown, was much larger than a full grown fat ox.

Sunday, June 29th.—We slept last night in the bush, where Dapa is at present living, having previously requested him to assemble the people for divine worship to-day. But the quiet of the Sabbath was disturbed in consequence of the return during the night of a number of the people who had been on the other side of the Umtata, to bring away the corn which they had left buried in their cattle kraals. These people brought news that the Fitkanie were again advancing, and that their avowed object was to take back the scalps of Faku, of Vossanie, and of Hintza, as also some hair, horses, and muskets of the white people. After having held a prayer-meeting in a retired corner of the wood by ourselves, we succeeded in collecting a congregation, including Dapa and his sons, &c., to whom I preached on "God so loved the world," &c.; a few were attentive, but the greater part seemed to be occupied with other thoughts. After service we had some more conversation respecting their views relative to the preaching their gospel among them, when we were fully satisfied of the strong desire for the establishment of the mission as soon as circumstances will allow. The whole country being at present in confusion, and as we knew not where to find Faku, the chief of the Amaponda nation, we decided on returning towards Butterworth, and not to penetrate so far as we originally intended to have done. We now rode to the kraal of Umjikwa, who had married the sister of Dapa, whom we found to be a strong, lively, old woman, with truly European features. She received us very pleasantly, and commenced telling us a long story about the ill nature of the Amakosa, or Caffers, who had taken advantage of their late troubles, and when they fled for refuge to the Bashee, stole many of the choicest of their cattle. We obtained from Dapa's sister a more distinct account of the Grosvenor's people than we could elicit from him; and

learned that those of the people who journeyed inland were all murdered by the Amaponda under the orders of Faku's father, who at that time was the chief of that nation. It appeared that the chief's jealousy and fear were excited by the number of our unfortunate countrymen who thus suddenly appeared in his country. The European ancestors of the mixed race under Dapa were probably English, from the names by which they were known, though as they have been somewhat changed by the native pronunciation of them, this is not a very certain criterion by which to decide on this subject. The female who was Dapa's mother was called "Bessy," or "Betsy," and one of the men was called "Tomee," probably a native corruption of "Tommy," or "Thomas:" the other, who was the father of Betsy, was called "Badee."

July 1st.—Slept near the Bashee River, which we crossed yesterday, and arrived towards the evening of this day at Butterworth, after a very fatiguing ride from before sunrise, in consequence of the very broken and rugged nature of the country. There are four entirely distinct nations, who all speak the Caffer language, and occupy a belt of beautiful country, extending along the coast from the Colony to Port Natal. The Amakosa, commonly called Caffers; the Amatambo, called Tambookies; the Amabambo, called Mambookies; and the Amaponda. The three first-named nations are very much like each other in dress and appearance, excepting only that the Mambookies have very large holes cut in their ears; but the Amaponda nation, of which we saw a few kraals near the Umtata, are easily distinguished from other nations, by the singular manner in which they dress their hair\*. They suffer it to grow long, when, from its being curly, like the hair of all Africans, it assumes the appearance of a huge

\* See the frontispiece.



wig, and is frequently adjusted with great care, and dressed with grease and charcoal. Many of them cut out a part of the hair in a circular form on the crown of the head; round the edge of this they stud a few red berries, which, together with some pretty feathers of various birds, complete this whimsical invention of human pride. None of us could be satisfied, until after the closest inspection, but that all these people actually wore wigs\*.

*Note.*—Some time after Mr. Shaw visited these people, the Chief, Dapa, sent a messenger to Mr. Shepstone, entreating that a Missionary might be sent to reside with him; a desire originating, no doubt, from other motives than that of receiving instruction. However this may be, so great appears to have been Dapa's anxiety on the subject, that a contention had arisen between him and one of his principal men relative to the place where the Missionary should reside on his arrival amongst them, each arguing his special claim to the honour and privilege of having the Mission premises close beside his own kraal. Dapa's great Captain urged, "Your mother was married to my brother, she returned to my care in her old age, and by my kraal was she buried; and as the Mission will spring out of her ashes, here must the Missionary dwell; his house must be by her grave." These arguments he further strengthened by appealing to the fact, that he was the first man who found Dapa's mother when wrecked on the coast. Dapa replied, "The institution must be mine; I first called for the Missionary, and he comes at my request; besides, I am the Chief." "But," rejoined the other, "did our *great woman* descend from you, or you from her? Since we are the counsellors of your father, if you are descended from her, even though you are a Chief, and an old man, you are our *child*, and cannot claim what belongs to *your mother* and not to you." To all this reasoning, Mr. Shepstone (to whom the messenger repeated this conversation) replied, "A Missionary will be the friend of you all; and will unite you, and strive to do you all good: on the particular spot where he shall dwell you must not indulge contention." With this answer the deputed messenger was well pleased. A Missionary Station has since been established at Dapa's Kraal, laid down in the map as near the St. John's River.

\* Missionary Notices, Aug. 1829.

## APPENDIX III.

The Amaponda Caffers—The Chief taken—Population—Extreme sufferings from want—Cruelties of the Natives—Bury a Child alive—Dreadful superstitions—Affecting particulars relative to the degraded state of the People.

THE following extracts are from the letters and journal of my esteemed friend the Rev. W. B. Boyce, with whose permission I lay them before the reader, detailing particulars of his travels and residence among the Amaponda Caffers in 1830, 1831, and 1832\*.

We left Morley on Monday, April 26th, crossed the Umtata, and proceeded to Amandola, the original site of Morley. The scenery near the Umtata baffles all power of description. We had to descend exceedingly steep banks before we could get to the river, and when the river was crossed, we had to ascend several hills very steep and by no means safe, as the path was very narrow, and a false step would have precipitated us into the rocky bed of the river. We found at Amandola the house which Mr. S. had built for a temporary residence burnt down; but the huts which the people had built were left standing, so that it appears

\* "To the Missionary we owe almost all the knowledge on which any reliance can be placed of savage life; the passing traveller is led away by first impressions; the trader is received with distrust; but the Missionary obtains the confidence of the savage, and enters his hut as his friend and benefactor."—*Mr. Buxton's Speech, House of Commons, July 15, 1828.*—Missionary Notices.

probable the house had been burnt to obtain the iron work of the building. We could not help regretting that circumstances would not permit the re-occupation of a site abounding with so many natural capabilities, such as are rarely to be found in this country. From Morley we travelled over several undulating plains; the scenery greatly resembling the downs in Sussex, but on a larger scale. We slept at a kraal, and the next day travelled through a similar country, but uninhabited until we drew near Faku's residence, where our road became rough and the scenery mountainous; the narrow dells being well cultivated, and the hill sides covered with kraals, and abounding in population. The "Great Place" is situated at the foot of some high hills, and appears at first sight to be in a deep valley, but on looking round I found that this valley is on the top of a hill three or four hundred feet above the bed of the river Garana. On one side was high mountains; on the other our view extended over a rough country to the Indian Ocean, which is about twenty miles distant. The heights of the river Zimvooboo formed a pleasing object in the landscape, not so much from their beauty as from the river forming the boundary between the Amapondas and a deserted tract of country, extending as far as Natal, which is claimed by the Zoolahs, and to which people it is not only desirable but absolutely necessary that Missionaries should be sent as soon as possible, there being little chance of peace among these far-distant tribes, until the Zoolahs receive the Gospel. Within two or three miles of Faku's great place, there cannot be less than seven or eight thousand people, living in larger kraals than those of Cafferland, and chiefly supported by tillage, possessing but few cattle in consequence of their wars with the Zoolahs. The Chief, Faku, did not give us an opportunity of conversing with him on the

evening of our arrival ; but he appointed a man to wait on us, and procure us the accommodation and food we needed. As is the custom, the hut where we supped and slept was crowded with visitors, who came to inquire, and tell the news. At sunrise we were awaked by a shrill singing, which proceeded from a sort of herald, who went to every hut in the "Great Place" and chaunted Faku's praise, dwelling upon his courage, the number and beauty of his wives and children, &c. Soon after Faku came up to our hut to see us, and excused himself to Mr. Shaw for not calling the evening before, pleading his ignorance of who he was, or as he expressed it, "How can I distinguish white men again, when they are all alike!" In order to make up for his negligence, he went out and brought in a large earthen pot of beer made from Caffer corn, which is not very bad, considering all circumstances. After a few sentences had passed on both sides, the Chief went to his councillors, who were all seated in groups in an open place near a fine tree, and we went and sat at a little distance. Faku then came out, and presented a piece of beef to Mr. Shaw, inviting him to sit with him at a small distance from the groups of people. Afterwards I was called, and then Mr. Shepstone, and to each of us was then given a piece of beef, cooked, and in a way not a little disgusting, which however we were obliged to eat, and that without much cleansing, as it was handed to us by the Chief's own hands, as a proof of his regard. He said that his heart was the same as last year, and that he was still looking for a teacher. Mr. Shaw replied, "You said last year that I did not intend to bring you a teacher; here is the proof of my truth, see him (pointing to me)." Faku then said "that I must come soon, and he would find me a place," and it was settled that he was to look for me in three moons. After this we returned on our journey home-

ward, rejoicing in the happy conclusion of our negotiation, and in the prospect of soon having a useful mission there.

[Mr. Boyce returns, and takes up his abode with the Chief Faku's Tribe, November 29, 1830.]

The site of the Station, he remarks, is tolerably pleasant for this part of the country; to the right and left of the ridge upon which we intend to build, are ranges of green hills, covered with the finest grass, a yard high up to their tops. In front we have a prospect of a distant range of mountains, one of which is a table mountain, with another near it in the form of a cone, to which the late Messrs. Cowie and Green gave the name of Mount Lowry\*. Below our ridge is a large and rather wide kloof, which contains a few acres of very good land for cultivation. Through this kloof the small stream Dangwarra runs, which is completely dried up in the dry season, at which time our water must be fetched from a more distant fountain, and the cattle will have to go to the Umgazi to drink, a distance of about three or four miles. There is very little timber suitable for building nearer than a fine bush called Turvey's Bush, about ten miles distant, to which the road is very bad. Perhaps we may find timber in the kloofs near the Zimvooboo, about the same distance from us. We are at about an equal distance from the great and little Umgazi rivers, and about fifteen miles from the sea. Since we have been here, the heat has been extreme in the former part of the day, but about two, P.M., we have been favoured with a fine breeze from the sea, which has made the latter part of the day comparatively pleasant. On the whole we have every reason to be satisfied with the place: it is the only place suitable for a Station, and we have chosen it for our abode, at the particular request of the Chief, which gives us a special claim upon him for protection. The population is very great, and not

\* In compliment to His Excellency Sir Lowry Cole.—Ed.

thinly scattered, but chiefly confined to the kloofs of the two Umgazis, and the descent of the Zimvooboo. Faku's power extends over Umyaku's tribe, near the Umtata, and over the Amaweli tribe, on the other side of the Zimvooboo. His own people cannot be estimated at less than twenty thousand in number; for from one hill near the Great Place Mr. Shepstone counted a hundred kraals, each of which contained from twenty to forty houses, which, after the usual manner of counting population in this country, will give more than ten thousand inhabitants; and the view from the hill only took in the population of one river, and the parts adjoining. Most of the land suitable for cultivation is occupied with corn-fields and gardens, upon which the inhabitants chiefly depend for food: they have two crops of corn in a year, and as the rains are more regular than in Cafferland, the harvest seldom fails. Both sexes are very industrious, compared with other tribes; and here for the first time on this side of the Fish River, an intimation was conveyed to us that the value of time was understood. A woman said one morning, "Pay me now for my milk, for it is time, I want to work in my garden." This trifling circumstance speaks volumes as to the regular and systematical industry of the people. Brother Shepstone, to whom this was spoken, was quite enlivened at the sound of such words, and observed, that after living seven years in Cafferland, this was the first time he had heard such an expression from a native, whose only care about time is, generally speaking, "how to kill it." The people around us are all well behaved and give us no trouble; they are willing to conform, in regard to dress, to our feelings of decency: a hint is sufficient, and this is no small comfort. Owing to the late unsettled state of the country, the present is a time of great distress. Many hundreds of people are living in the bushes on roots, without any fixed habitation,

and almost driven to desperation from extreme distress. In riding a few miles Mr. Painton counted above three hundred people seeking roots for food: there are a great many eatable roots which will support life, but they are not very nutritious; they cause the people's bodies to swell to an enormous size, and the striking contrast between their emaciated limbs and swollen bodies is very painful to behold. In consequence of this scarcity of food many men are driving from their kraals their least valued wives, and the old and infirm who cannot go far to seek roots are left to starve. A great many people, especially women, come every day, hoping "to be picked up." We do what we can for the most distressed objects, but our stock of food will require very good management, and some self-denial, on the part of ourselves and people, in order to make it hold out until the harvest time, which is yet six weeks or two months off. However we are favoured with peace in our immediate neighbourhood; Api,\* the Ficani Chief, who was last April living above Faku, near the sources of the Zimvooboo, has been driven thence, by a commando from Dingaan the Zulu Chief. He has fled (according to what we could learn) to the Amastutæ tribes, near the sources of the Orange River, and has made an inroad into the Tambookie country, near Mr. Haddy's Station. I think we are as safe here as in any part of this country beyond the frontier. I do not suppose, in the event of any war, we should be molested, as the late expedition under Colonel Somerset and Major Dundas against the marauding tribes have left upon the minds of the natives a salutary impression of the power of the English; and the humane and equitable conduct pursued and enforced by the commanders has tended very much to raise the character of the English nation, of which in many instances of our journey we have reaped the advan-

\* Capai.

tage. We have great reason to be thankful that our situation is to all human appearance a very safe one ; as from the nature of the country, and the difficulties of the road, should an enemy come suddenly, we should have little chance of making our escape ; but in reference to all these matters we must remember that "the Lord reigneth."

On Wednesday the 24<sup>th</sup> instant, Faku, accompanied by about fifty of his subordinate captains, paid his first visit to the Station. This, as you well know, is equivalent to a formal recognition of it as his school, under his protection, and we may now consider ourselves as "by law established." We testified our respect in the usual manner by turning out of the kraal a beast for slaughter. With the present of a blue cloak, an iron cooking-pot, a black ox, together with an assortment of beads, buttons, &c., which I presented to him in the name of the Society, he appeared highly gratified ; he stated his intention of forming a fresh place for his cattle, upon the lower part of the ridge where we now are, within a mile of us, in order, as he expressed himself, "that we may be one house," and our cattle may graze together under the same herders. This is, I understood, one of the greatest proofs of confidence a Chief can give, and such as I believe has never yet been shown by any chief at the commencement of the other Stations in this part of Africa. But in many respects Faku differs from the Caffer Chiefs. His authority is less limited, and he decides on matters of business chiefly on his own responsibility. His answers are given in plain and unequivocal language, so that it is possible for a person even not well versed in the intricacies of Caffer diplomatic phraseology to understand what he means by what he says, which is a rare case in this country.

There are generally a number of natives present at our daily morning service, and they behave with great pro-



priety: at such times we sing Caffer hymns, and the interpreter, J. Burton, a truly pious and consistent Caffer, explains the object of our thus assembling together, and prays in their own tongue. Yesterday being a rainy day, we had few natives on the Station but those who are employed regularly. However, we commenced our Sunday School with eleven natives; and I hope to be able, as soon as I get a Caffer hut to live in, to teach the people one hour every morning or evening, either before or after the hours of labour; and when absent itinerating, this day-school will be conducted by Mr. Painton. With respect to my own feelings, I scarcely know whether hopes or fears preponderate in my mind. Humanly speaking, the undertaking in which I am engaged is folly; but then the Gospel is the power of God, and there is the promise of the influence of the Holy Spirit, and of special influence in answer to special prayer. Upon the prayers of the Church of God our success in a great measure mainly depends; to make use of a Caffer mode of expression, "the friends at home must not be tired," for they will never have done enough so as to leave no room for further exertions. It will require all the surplus wealth, and the utmost exercise of patience and faith, in the members of the Church of Christ, before the heathens are converted to God.

*March 11th, 1831.*—I arrived safe on the Station from Graham's Town, where I had been to attend the District Meeting; found all well, and received the following information from Mr. Painton (who had been left in charge of the Mission):—

Three weeks ago Faku's sister-in-law died: four persons were immediately tortured, and then beaten to death by sticks, for having caused her death by witchcraft; the charge was substantiated by the following evidence: "the poor creatures had been seen to wave their hands as they

passed by the sick woman's kraal." Six weeks after a great captain died near the Umgazi, six persons were tortured and then burnt to death on the same charge, on similar evidence; the witch doctors pretended to find a piece of wood called Chaka buried in their kraal, which as it rotted would cause the deceased to rot away: they were accused also of having burnt a lizard in their garden, in order that the deceased might have no corn to eat, and so die of hunger. In addition, John Burton, my interpreter, informed me, "that on his return from Butterworth (to which place he accompanied me when I went to the District Meeting) he arrived in the evening at a kraal near the Bashee, and found the place in great confusion: on inquiring the cause, he learned, that food being scarce, the people had buried a child of seven years old alive, because they did not like to see it starve before their eyes; the grave being not very deep, and the soil light, the child struggled hard, and its crying was heard by the mother, whose feelings prompted her to dig the child up again: the people were holding a consultation as to the propriety of burying the child again. John Burton reasoned with them, gave up the little food he had, and the people promised to let the child live."

15th.—Faku, accompanied by about one hundred and twenty attendants, came to see me, bringing a cow as a present from his brother. After the usual civilities were over, I told him what I had heard of the murders on the account of witchcraft; he and his great men attempted to justify what had been done on the plea of ancient usage.

31st.—The waggon arrived from Graham's Town, with supplies, after a journey of six weeks from town, having been delayed by rain and the badness of the roads between the Umtata and the Station. Jiqwa, one of Faku's confidential servants, who accompanied the waggon to town, re-

turned safe and well, and from the favourable impression which the sight of Graham's Town has produced upon his mind, I trust that his reports will operate greatly in favour of the Mission.

*April 4th.*—This morning early, Faku and about five hundred of his people were upon the Station, to see the waggon, and learn if there was any thing to be given away. I gave Faku an assortment of beads and buttons, two handkerchiefs, a looking-glass, two tins to hold milk, and a blanket. To his brother I was obliged to give a good present in return for his cow; Faku's wives and great men expected something. Faku will not hear when the subject of his children's learning to read is introduced; he is pained at knowing it is possible to express the sound of his name upon paper, being probably influenced by a superstitious dread of our having it in our power, by this means, to bewitch him.

*18th.*—This evening, about sunset, a poor girl, far gone in a consumption, was brought to the Station by her father, mother, brothers, and other relatives, about fifteen in number. We made her as comfortable as we could, in a house near the kraal. She was so weak and sore from inflammation, that the weight of her kaross was painful to bear, so I lent her a blanket, hoping that the warmth of this covering would induce perspiration, and give some little relief to the burning fever by which this poor creature was consumed. Her history is singular. About five months ago she was sent to a female doctor for her education, as she was intended by her parents for a doctor. In going through the initiatory dancings and singings she probably caught a severe cold, which in the course of time reduced her to her present condition. In her illness she particularly desired a handkerchief to wrap round her head, and several times

sent her brothers to Mrs. Painton to request one. Her brothers said nothing of her illness, but simply stated "a doctress had sent them for a present," and of course they received nothing. A few days ago her father came, saying she was ill, and asked for medicine, describing her complaint tolerably well. As it would be useless to administer any medicine in a Caffer place, and perhaps dangerous, owing to the improper food, and injurious prescriptions of the native doctors, the old man was told to bring the girl to the Station; and I promised to find her a house, food, and everything likely to conduce to the establishment of her health. At first the old man was unwilling, but the girl would not rest until he brought her here. Nothing was decided upon this evening as to her treatment, as we wished to see her after a night's rest in her usual state, when free from excitement.

19th.—This morning the girl's friends were assembled, and informed of the nature of her disorder, and the small probability of her recovery. I told them we had medicines which would give her relief, and that our food would agree better with her, than the strong beer they had drenched her with; and that if they chose to give her up to me, she should remain with a female relation to wait upon her; so that, although a cure was very unlikely, her latter days would be made comfortable. A long discussion ensued, in which they particularly wished to know "whether it was not possible to cut her back and chest and put in some medicine which would take out the thing that pained her." However, at length they said, "We have done our best for her;—we can do no more: she gets worse and worse—we now give her up to you to do as you please." The girl was very much pleased with this decision; she feels quite at home, and eats and drinks whatever is given her, and appears to have the utmost

confidence in our good will towards her; and she has great reason to rejoice in her present circumstances, as had she been left to her friends, they seeing no hope of her recovery, would have soon tired of having the painful object before them, and would have conveyed her to the bush, where she would have soon died of cold, or been devoured by the wolves.

For some time past, Faku, who is now very strong, but very poor, has been seeking an opportunity to interfere with the petty Chiefs near Morley, who, from their mutual jealousies, and consequent disunion, are quite unable to cope with him in war. Pretending that Cetani (one of the Chiefs in Morley) had a dog named No-Faku, that is, Mother of Faku, and that the same Chief had assumed a great name, which Faku had appropriated to himself since the defeat of the Quabees, (the name of Jerilli, nearly synonymous with our word conqueror, though not exactly so,) he sent out three commandoes, himself accompanying the last. Cetani and other Chiefs provided for the safety of the cattle by sending them to Morley, and then fled over the Umtata. Faku's people killed six of Cetani's men, and destroyed his corn, but were, as they said, "ashamed" to go after the cattle to Morley, so they gained no plunder, the desire of which was the sole cause of the war. I was not aware of this business until Faku had left his place, and was above a day's journey towards the Umtata; for he took care to concert his measures secretly, wishing to take Cetani unawares.

*May 1st. Sunday.*—This morning, before service hours, a man arrived from Faku, requesting a beast, and to come and see him, as he was unwell, adding, that ambassadors had arrived from Dingaan, the Zulu Chief, the preceding evening; I promised compliance on the morrow, as I saw that his object was to show the Zulus that he as well as Dingaan had Europeans living with him on friendly terms.

*2nd.*—Rode to Faku's, having previously sent him an ox—found him in high spirits, and civil, even to servility. He pretended that he had not heard the message the Zulus had brought, but waited that I might hear it at the same time, as he wished the Zulus to see that the English were the captains of the land. The ambassadors stated that Dingaan had sent to assure Faku of his peaceable intentions, and to acquaint him he was welcome to take the cattle which formerly belonged to the Quabees, and which are now in the possession of Api, a Fecani Chief. In the course of the day, I learned that John Cane and his party were not dead, as stated in my letter 22nd of April, but had arrived safe; an accident which occurred on the road was the cause of the report of their death.

*3rd.*—Itinerated this day and the following between the two Umgazi rivers, as far as the sea-side, holding short services at the principal kraals. The people were attentive, and twice I was asked a few pertinent questions, which convinced me that curiosity was excited.

*18th.*—Brother Shepstone arrived from Morley, in order to see Faku, hoping to be able to make peace between him and Cetani.

*20th.*—We visited Faku, and were satisfied with his declarations that his quarrel was over, and he wished to live in peace. He promised to come to the station early next morning, with an ox for Mr. S. to take home with him, as a proof of the existence of a friendly feeling between them. On reaching the station, we learned that the step-mother of the sick girl (mentioned in my letter of the 22nd April) had been sent for in great haste to her husband's kraal, and had gone immediately when sent for, though engaged at the time in smearing Mrs. Painton's house. Mr. P. suspecting some mischief, sent after her immediately, to know what was

going on. The messengers brought word that the brother-in-law of the sick girl, in the absence of Jama, the father, (who was living with his daughter upon the Station,) had held an umhlahlo, that is a witch-dance, in order to find out the person guilty of bewitching the sick girl, and the step-mother was accused, and was in confinement. It was laid to her charge that the medicine and diet which the poor girl had taken on the Station had been rendered inefficacious through something she had given her; I sent my interpreter to demand her as a servant belonging to the Station, and to warn the people of the kraal what would be the consequence if my servant should be punished without my consent. The people were very much enraged at this interference, and Bokotwa (Jama's son-in-law) said, "The school is a bush for witches." My messenger returned with the vague promise that the woman should be restored to-morrow.

21st.—Early this morning I sent to So Burrilli, Jama's captain, to demand the woman. He said he would order her to be restored. The messenger then went to Jama's kraal, "to thank Bokotwa for his word." This is equivalent to a notice that legal means will be resorted to, to punish him for the scandal thrown upon the Station. Bokotwa attempted to apologize for his words. In the mean time Faku arrived with the ox for Mr. Shepstone. After hearing our statement and that of Jama's, he decided that Jama's people had acted illegally. 1st, They had no business to interfere in the sick girl's case, "after throwing her away" (that is giving her completely up) at the Station; 2nd, The umhlahlo was illegal, because held in the absence of the master of the kraal (Jama), and without his consent; 3rd, The woman residing on the Station, and employed as a servant, was not subject to the jurisdiction of the master of the kraal to which she formerly belonged. With respect to Bokotwa, Faku could not interfere until

So Barilli had failed in compelling him to pay for his scandal. Just before sunset the poor woman (named Gecani) arrived on the Station, accompanied by Bokotwa and another brother; she was dreadfully bruized and cut in the breasts, and was covered over with ants, by which she had been tormented in order to induce her to confess, her own children being foremost in torturing her. Had it not been for her temporary connexion with the Station, which gave me a right to claim her, she would have been tortured until extreme pain had caused her to criminate herself, or some one else, and then put to death. The impudent fellow Bokotwa came with the utmost assurance, as if he had done nothing wrong, and wished to make a merit of restoring the woman. He asked for "mercy" on account of his words against the Station, which he was aware would involve him in trouble. Brother Shepstone's indignation was roused, he severely reproved him in Caffer; and while he was gazing in astonishment to hear a white man speak so fluently in his own tongue, brother Shepstone snatched his assagai from him, lest he should do any mischief, and then ordered him off the Station, warning him not to return until he had paid for his conduct.

28th.—For some time past the sick girl, notwithstanding Mr. Painton's indefatigable attention to her, grew worse every day. It was painful to observe the darkness of her understanding, and her apparent inability to comprehend the simplest truths of the Gospel. She would frequently ask, "Why don't you let me get better? why don't you get before my sickness and turn it?" This morning before daylight my interpreter called me up, as he thought the sick girl was dying. By the time I was dressed I heard a loud scream, and going out, saw Gecani running towards Mrs. Painton's house, pursued by Jama. The girl was dead,



and the old man, under the influence of awful superstition, was anxious to kill his wife for having by witchcraft caused the death of his daughter. After providing for the safety of the poor woman, we endeavoured to calm the old man, but our success was very small, until his grief for his daughter was partly superseded by a cow and calf he had in the kraal, fearing I should detain them for payment: he was alternately lamenting his daughter, and calling upon the herder to give up his cattle. When he found that I had no intention of detaining any part of his property, he appeared more reconciled. In the course of the day the girl's relations came and carried her body to be buried, as she was a person of some little importance, otherwise her body would have been dragged to the bushes, and there left to the wolves.

*June 2nd.*—This evening, during the time of service, a man was seen lurking behind the house where Gecani usually resides. As the family of Jama had threatened to kill her if they met with her, it is probable that this man had come with that intention. He ran away before we could seize him, but a gun was fired over his head, as a warning to all ill-disposed persons of the danger likely to be incurred by lurking about the Station in the night time.

*3rd.*—Heard to-day that men on horseback have been on Faku's place in the night-time, and when discovered rode away. The enemies of the Station say, that Mr. Shepstone has lent his horses to the Chiefs near him, to come and spy the land, and that Mr. S. has determined to burn Faku's place, and bewitch his people. This they say will be accomplished by his looking in a book, and then ordering a piece of grass to fly to Faku's place, and do all this mischief. These reports have been raised to furnish Faku with

an excuse for breaking his word with Mr. Shepstone, as he earnestly covets the plunder of the country between the Umtata and Bashee rivers, where there are no Chiefs of much ability to make any opposition.

10th.—Itinerated in the direction of Mount Lowry, at the foot of the first range of mountains, and slept at a kraal belonging to a sister of Faku's, near that mountain. I stated at different kraals the object of the mission, and invited the people to send their children to school.

11th.—I proceeded through a very mountainous and broken country, as far as the river Zimvooboo. Here is a very dense population, and very extensive cultivation. The scenery is very grand; but the fatigue of dragging a weary horse up these high hills precludes the possibility of any enjoyment of natural beauties. My last visit this journey was to a party of Bushmen, living in some wretched sheds close to the Zimvooboo. They usually roam about between that river and Natal, shooting elephants, the flesh of which they eat, and exchange the ivory with Faku's people for corn and tobacco. Two of their Chiefs hearing that white men were living at Faku's, came to see the Station, and having received trifling presents, were gratified with their reception. One of these men interpreted my interpreter's Caffree into the Bushman language, and, for the first time, one hundred and twenty of those wanderers heard the words of everlasting life.

12th.—Baptized my interpreter's child in the presence of a congregation of above one hundred people, besides children, explaining at the same time the nature of the ordinance, and the obligations consequent upon it. Such opportunities are of great use in helping to fix the attention of a degraded and besotted people, upon whom, humanly speaking, all labour and the use of ordinary means seems to be thrown away.

16th.—These last six weeks we have suffered much from want of water, not only for our cattle, but for our own drinking. Every endeavour has been used to find water by digging, but in vain. The natives now are unanimous in stating that the Dangwana is only a periodical rivulet, running in the wet season from about September to April, but at other times dry. The station was fixed here at the request of Faku, who would hear of no other place, and on his positive assurance that there was plenty of water all the year round. This caused us to overlook the badness of the road, and the distance and difficulty of procuring timber for building; but without a regular supply of water, it is impossible to go on with substantial buildings, or to live with any health or comfort. To-day we have endeavoured to look out a place, near at hand, more suitable for a station than the present site, upon which we may with confidence commence the erection of permanent buildings. We have found an eligible place at the first Umgazi River, about two miles in a direct line nearer the colony. The Umgazi being a large river, is never dry; and by removing here, we avoid at least one day's journey with a loaded waggon, owing to the dangerous and difficult road from the Umgazi to the Dangwana.

17th.—Itinerated down the first Umgazi, which is very thickly peopled. The people, as usual, behaved well; but I fear there was more of politeness than sincerity in their assurances of their anxiety to see me again, as the speakers generally added—"We shall soon come and ask you for a present." The land is full of lying wonders: pumpkins have been heard to speak; a cloud has carried away some oxen; and a voice from the clouds has reproached the hearers for attending to "meester men of no skill, instead of applying to men of acknowledged ability." This is said to have taken

place near the Bashee. A son of Gamboosh (near Hintsä) has had it revealed to him in a vision, that in a short time a pestilence will kill all the unmarried men and women. This has caused great alarm among the parties concerned. Probably this prophet has many daughters whom he wishes to dispose of in marriage, and to receive cattle in lieu of them.

19th.—After morning service, I married likwee (a man who has been on the Station since its commencement) to Danti, a woman who has been here five months. The ceremony was observed with great interest by the congregation, to whom I explained the first institution of marriage, and the evils of polygamy.

23rd.—Rode to Faku's place to inform him of the intended removal of the station to the Umgazi. He mentioned the report of Mr. Shepstone having sent men on horseback to plant booti (bewitching matter) upon his place; but as I resented this imputation, and demanded the names of the people who said so, he changed his tone, and said that he knew the report was false, but yet it was strange horses should be seen at his place several nights, and the next day several of his great men were taken unwell. That sickness should prevail among the great men is not to be wondered at, as for some months past they have been drinking to excess almost every day, and dancing great part of the night. When we begun to talk about the removal of the station, he said—"Why don't you make rain? I know the Dangwana is a dry place, and I put you there thinking you would make rain for yourself, and then we would get some at the same time." It was in vain to contend. He said further—"Why do you talk to me about God? you yourself are God: do give us rain;" and then he commenced singing a sort of chant, usually sung when rain-makers are trying to make

rain. At length it was agreed, that as the Dangwana was not suitable for a Mission-station, we were at liberty to go to the place we had fixed upon.

*July 8th, 1831.*—This morning a messenger arrived from a petty captain, bringing word that the Englishmen had been driven from Natal by the Zoolas, and had arrived with a number of native dependents among the Amatusens (a small tribe over the Zimvooboo, subject to Faku), and that one of the Englishmen slept at Faku's last night, and was now on his way to the station. Soon after Mr. William Fynn arrived. He stated that for several years past (two or three, I think) the English party at Natal, consisting of seven individuals, had lived unmolested, and had succeeded in establishing a regular trade, having occasionally a vessel with consignments of goods from America and St. Helena; but that lately they had reason to suspect that it was the intention of the Zoolas to fall upon them and destroy them in the night, as soon as an American vessel then in port had sailed. This sudden change in the feelings of the Zoolas towards them was owing to the falsehoods of a Caffer named Jacob, who, being well acquainted with the colony, and having recently visited it with John Cane, had heard reports of a projected settlement at Natal, and had contrived to alarm Dingaan by a report that a commando was shortly coming from the colony to take possession of the country. Expecting to be attacked in the night, the three Messrs. Fynn fled, with part of their movable property, and about one hundred and fifty head of cattle, accompanied by a number of the natives. Three days' journey from Natal, the Zoolas came upon them in the night, killed about thirty of their party, chiefly women and children, and carried off their cattle. After a wearisome journey of twenty-five days, they arrived in great distress

among the Amatusens, their party now consisting of about seventy, including women and children. John Cane and Thomas Holstead remained at Natal, intending to follow by another road. Ogle was at Dingaan's residence, being obliged to go with four natives, armed with guns, against some of Dingaan's enemies. Report states one enemy to be the great chief visited by Mr. Archbell—viz., Matsilikatse, or Umgilikazie. Mr. Isaacs, from St. Helena, had left Natal in the American vessel. Before Mr. F. had finished his statement, the mother of Faku, named Umkalu, that is, great, arrived on the station, accompanied by several of Faku's wives, and about forty or fifty attendants, intending to remain a few days, in order that she might be made to understand "God's word." Among other things which were very pleasing to hear, she said—"I want no presents; beads are of no use to an old woman like me; I wish to hear the great news, that I may make my son hear it, and that I may set the people a good example before I die. I am the god of the Amapondas, and perhaps they will listen to me. I am confident you have come into the land for our good, as there is nothing here to tempt white people with the prospect of gain; for ever since I can remember, there has been nothing here but sickness, and war, and famine. I pray to God every day, and Oh! how I shout and cry to him! and if it were not for the great fear that comes over me when I pray, I think I should be more easy after prayer." On further conversation, it appeared evident that her mind had been somewhat affected by the truths of the Gospel; and though the light she had was very small, yet it had been sufficient to make her feel the misery of total darkness, and to raise misgivings in her mind as to the future. So anxious had she been to acquire knowledge, that she had been in the habit of sending people from the great place to

the station on Sundays to attend service, and bring home to her all they could remember. She then made them repeat to her what they had heard every day, sometimes for ten days following. Very frequently, to her disappointment, her messengers' memories proved treacherous; and all they could say was the usual excuse of an inattentive Caffer hearer—"I had it all in my head when I was hearing it, but when I come out of the house it was all knocked to pieces, and now it is gone."

*July 9th.*—William Fynn returned to the Amatuzens with a temporary supply of food for the refugees. In the afternoon, two old men—one of them Faku's foster-father, and his principal guardian when young, the other his doctor, who carries his kaross when he goes to battle, and who smears his body with cow-dung, as a charm to protect him from danger—came to converse privately with me, observing—"We see you are not pleased with us; let us know your heart." My grievances were soon stated—viz., "Faku's hostile intentions towards the chiefs near Morley; his aspersions upon Mr. Shepstone; and his delay in making the station clean from the scandal thrown upon it by Bokotwa." The men promised that these things should be soon settled to my satisfaction. All this was merely introductory to their principal object in coming, which was to ascertain how I felt towards the Englishmen from Natal, whom Faku was inclined to consider as his enemies, and also what news they had told me. I gave them the news as I heard it from Mr. Fynn, which satisfied them, as it corresponded with what he had previously said to Faku. Wishing Faku fully to understand the reasons which influenced me in my conduct towards the Englishmen, I sent him word that I knew nothing of the Englishmen from Natal but this: "They are my countrymen and in distress, therefore I should help them

as much as I could; for it was not our custom when people were in trouble to talk to them about their faults, but to assist them. Faku must take care they are not injured while living under his protection; they ask nothing of him but liberty to remain a short time to rest; with any future arrangements between Faku and them, as to their removal or remaining in his country, I had nothing to do, as it was a matter of perfect indifference to me whether they remained or went away, only they would not be allowed to remain on the station, as none but those concerned in the mission could live there." After a long conversation on the murders committed under pretence of punishing persons guilty of witchcraft, the old man, with Faku's mother, and three of his wives, promised to use all their influence to put the umhlahlos down, affecting to be convinced of the wickedness of the practice.

23rd.—This day the temporary cook-house and the corn-store were burnt down, through the carelessness of Gecani. For some time Mr. Painton's house was in great danger; but, through the good providence of God, the wind changed, and with the exception of about four waggon-loads of corn, no property of any value was destroyed.

August 1st.—Mr. Collis arrived here on his way to Natal, with two waggons, two Englishmen, and several Hottentots, intending to attempt a settlement there for the purposes of trade. He carries a letter from his Excellency the Governor of the Colony to Dingaan, recommending him to live in peace, which letter he will read to that chief. He hopes to be able to explain matters to the satisfaction of Dingaan, so as to admit of the resettlement of Messrs. Fynn at Natal. Messrs. Fynn intend to accompany him part of the way, and then wait the result of the communications with Dingaan.



9th.—Faku's messenger having returned from Dingaan, brought me a short note from John Cane, informing me that he and all the other Englishmen were safe, and that the Chief was friendly and willing for Messrs. Fynn to return.

Sept. 9th.—We removed this day to the new place on the Umgazi, upon which we have erected a substantial dwelling-house, forty feet by twelve, and a school-room, thirty feet by twelve, both wattled buildings but unusually strong, so that with trifling repairs they will last from ten to fifteen years.

29th.—Faku visited this place, bringing with him a beast from Jama, to pay for Bokotwa's scandal. This I received as full satisfaction, and then presented it to Faku, that it might stand in his kraal as a proof that the Station was no longer unclean. Faku confirmed the news that I had previously heard, viz., that Api's people are leaving their Chief, being tired of his predatory way of life, and fearing an attack from the Zoolas. It is a matter of great thankfulness that this Mission was established with Faku, at the time it was established. Then, Faku was but just recovering from the invasion of the Zoolas, and was glad of the opportunity of having Europeans to reside with him, as he hoped by their means to live unmolested by his much-dreaded enemies. Now, he neither fears Dingaan, Api, or any other chief; and if not restrained by the Mission, would begin to revenge himself on the tribes near the Umtata, who, in the time of his distress, he says, "took advantage of his trouble, to plunder his people." Thus, had no Mission been formed here, the flourishing Station on the Umtata (Morley) would have not been safe, and must probably have been abandoned. At present, whatever wars Faku may be engaged in, Morley is safe, as far as he is

concerned. I very much fear he will not long be restrained from punishing some of his old enemies; for notwithstanding his present desire to be on good terms with the Station, and although his mother and several of his principal captains are averse to war, yet there are living on the "Great Place," a number of young men who are truly "Sons of Belial," and who long for an opportunity of enriching themselves with the plunder of the neighbouring tribes. These, by indirectly taunting the Chief with want of courage and by making unfavourable comparisons between him and his ancestors, and by gathering up every little trivial report, as to what other Chiefs may have said to their own Chief's disadvantage, are very frequently the originators of bloody contests. Should the next news from Natal remove all apprehension of danger from that quarter, I should not be surprised if the whole country from the Zimvooboo to the Bashee be involved in war.

*October 15th.*—The whole country is alarmed, and the petty Chief, So Barilli, has sent his cattle to feed upon the Station for safety, owing to the following occurrence. A male child has been born to Faku lately, which, from the rank of its mother, is the great son or heir of its father. According to a custom which has prevailed from time immemorial among the Amapondas and Amatembu, it was deemed necessary for a great Chief, of a particular family, in which the honour is hereditary, to be put to death, so that his head might be used as a vessel to hold a decoction of roots, with which the new-born child was to be washed: this charm, they imagine, will prevent Faku's family from becoming extinct. Umcwengi, the Chief who was to have been put to death, fled with his cattle to the mountains, and being supported by several powerful clans, refused to

submit, and contends that the doctors are mistaken in supposing him to be the person who ought to suffer. Every petty Chief is now alarmed, as they say some one must be put to death. While this affair was in agitation, I made many attempts to see Faku, but he kept out of my way: I delivered my testimony against this crying abomination to his great men, who pretended to know nothing about it.

*Nov. 8th.*—This day I received letters from Messrs. Collis and Fynns, from Natal, informing me of the safe arrival of their party.

*Dec. 1st.*—Messrs. Cawood, with their wives and families, arrived here in six waggons on their way to Natal. This morning, hearing that a man who a year ago had stolen a cow of Mr. Painton's had, together with his wife, been accused of witchcraft by a doctor who was his wife's brother, I sent to the people who were torturing him, to inform them that if he were put to death I should look to them for the fine owing to me by him on account of his former theft; this induced them to permit his escape, and he and his wife fled to Umcwengi who protects them.

*24th.*—Faku came with a large party to tell the news: I expostulated with him on his debauchery; he replied, "It is our custom, and your laws are too hard for us." I learned to-day that the word "Satan," is used among the Amapondas, as the name of an evil Spirit: they say the word is not of foreign origin, but an "everlasting word," that is, a word they have always been accustomed to use.

It is also the custom to baptize men previous to their officiating as doctors.

*28th.*—Heard to-day that the doctress who accused the poor woman, Gecani, last May, of bewitching Jama's daughter, who died on the Station as related in my Journal, now says that Jama himself is the guilty person, and that "he is

killing all the people on the Umgazi." She says, "Jama is great, therefore I was afraid to speak out, therefore I accused *that thing* Gecani, *that thing that is only a woman.*" Jama expecting soon to be condemned by an umlahlo, endeavoured lately to escape with his cattle in the night, having first muzzled them, lest their lowing should cause him to be discovered; but he was prevented by his family, who threatened to alarm the place if he took one beast with him; so the old man, finding he could not be permitted to take his cattle, could not bear to leave them behind, and remains at home waiting patiently the issue.

*Jan. 6th, 1832.*—Heard to-day that the sister of one of the men residing on the Station, attempting to leave her kraal, among the Amatembu near the Bashee, in order to reside with her brother on the Station, was murdered in the path, by people from the kraal she had left, who disapproved of her coming to reside here. For this I can obtain no redress, as the thing is difficult to prove; and even if clearly proved, the life of a poor woman of no rank would be considered as amply atoned for by the payment of a calf!

*23rd.* Brother Shepstone and I left Morley to attend the District Meeting at Graham's Town. During my absence from the Station, Dr. Smith and Lieutenant Edie visited the Station on the way to Natal, to which place the Doctor has been sent by his Excellency the Governor of the Colony, in order that he may bring a faithful account of its capabilities. Soon after I left, Jama, the old man, and Bokowva (who was driven from the Station for his cruelty to poor Gecani, by Mr. Shepstone, as related in my journal of last May,) were both seized and tortured on a charge of witchcraft. Mr. Painton interfered in the only way likely to be of service to them, by claiming them both as debtors on account of the food and medicine given to the

sick girl last April and May. By this means time was gained, and Faku interfered, ordering their lives to be spared, but their cattle to be taken. It is reported that in future none are to be put to death for witchcraft, but they are to pay cattle when they are condemned.

I have availed myself of the foregoing statements, together with the following of a more recent date from Mr. Palmer (the successor to Mr. Boyce at this Station), in order to bring before the reader, at one view, the deplorable condition of the native tribes inhabiting this part of the country. That human nature should be sunk to such a state of degradation, as to appear influenced by a degree of barbarity to which the shaggy inhabitants of the forest are strangers, cannot fail to awaken in the mind feelings of deep and painful emotion, and to call forth our best sympathies in behalf of those who have voluntarily relinquished the society of kindred, home and civilized life, to spend their days in the midst of a community enveloped in all the horrors of heathen darkness and superstition.

*Extract from the Journal of MR. S. PALMER, dated Morley, South Africa, June 24th, 1834.\**

As I shall have occasion to mention the names of Umyeki and Capai several times, it will be best, in the first place, to inform you who they are.

Umyeki is a Captain of considerable influence, who lived until lately between Morley and Buntingville, and was considered an ally of Faku's. He is a man who delights in war; and as the Missionary at Morley has been some check upon him, he endeavoured, several times, to prevail upon Faku to come against the Station and the Captains adjoining,

\* Missionary Notices, January and May, 1835.

but could not prevail. Lately there has been some misunderstanding between him and Faku; and fearing an attack from Faku, he sent to the Station to ask to come on this side the Umtata River, and unite with the Captains round Morley. This has occasioned me much trouble, as you will see by extracts from my Journal.

Capaa is a marauding Chief, as his father was before him. He is a man of great power; and from making attacks in the night, and putting all to death, is the terror of the country. For some time past he has lived a little on the other side of the Zimvooboo River, and Faku has been constantly watching his movements; for though his power is small, when compared to Faku's, yet, from the character of the man, Faku deemed it prudent to be on his guard.

*Dec. 22nd, Sunday.*—Umyeki sent three men to inform me he was in danger, and wished me to direct him what to do. I desired them to wait until the morning, and also requested the Captains who were at chapel to attend in the morning to hear the news. In the afternoon we had several Captains, together with their councillors, at chapel.

*Oct. 23rd.*—Quanda and the representatives of two other Captains came to hear what word Umyeki had sent. Before speaking to Umyeki's messengers, I called the Captains connected with the Station, and informed them that it was not for me to say who should live among them, and therefore I had called them to hear what Umyeki said, that they might give an answer. They said they should never give their consent for him to come among them, as he could not be trusted; for as soon as his present quarrel with Faku was over, he would be making attacks upon them. They then requested me to call Umyeki near the Station, but not afford him any protection, and then they would all join together, and be avenged for all former grievances. To this, of course, I objected, saying, "I can have nothing to do

with treachery, and therefore if you intend to act so, I shall inform him that he must not come here." I then called the messengers, who said that the Amaponda and Amatembu were determined to destroy Umyeki, and now that he had no friend, he wished me to take him under the protection of the Station. I then charged Umyeki with calling Capai against Cokaz, in October last, which they denied, though there is no doubt on the minds of any who knew the case. The answer sent to Umyeki was, that as to his dispute with Faku, the Captains on this side the Umtata could not interfere, as that would be bringing themselves into a quarrel with Faku; and as to myself as a Missionary, I could have nothing to do with disputes between Faku and Umyeki; and though it was true we sometimes spoke for those that were in trouble, yet we did not do it without any reference to their being innocent or guilty, and Umyeki must recollect he was stained with the blood of Cokaz's people, who were killed by Capai; at his request, therefore, I could not say anything, as I did not wish to have to do with a man of blood. I would therefore recommend Umyeki to settle his dispute with Faku, and thus sit still on his own place. I then requested the Captains not to interfere in the dispute between Umyeki and Faku, to which they agreed. As Dapa and Cetani were absent, I sent to inform them what had been done, when Cetani said it was right, and he should act according to my advice.

*Jan. 2nd, 1834.*—I heard that Faku's army was out against Umyeki, but the Captains near the Station sat still.

*6th.*—I heard from Mr. Satchell that Faku had returned, after taking some of Umyeki's cattle; but as Umyeki ran away, Faku did not pursue him. I also heard that Umyeki was returned to his home.

*Jan. 9th, 1834.*—Umyeki, after returning home, came on this side the Umtata River, and made an attack on the Amatembu, a short distance from the Station, when the latter were put to flight, and several killed on both sides: many of the women and children came to the Station, and nearly all the cattle in the neighbourhood were driven towards us. This, together with our having refused to have anything to do with Umyeki, made us think it was more than probable he would make an attack upon the Station; more particularly so as one of the Captains sent to inform me that Umyeki said, “I see where the cattle are gone, and will hunt that bush (meaning our Station) in the morning.” We therefore appointed persons to watch during the night, and in the morning were glad to find that Umyeki had returned home. Since which period he has left his old country, and joined Cetani, though Cetani engaged to do as the other Captains, namely, to have nothing to do with Umyeki. In consequence of this union, Umyeki (who knows Faku’s friendly disposition towards the Missionary) has placed himself at the cattle place belonging to the Station. I called Cetani to the Station to inquire why he had called Umyeki on this side the river, and consequently involved us in disputes with Faku. I then informed him that during the time I had been at Morley, I had been watching to preserve him from Faku, but I now saw he was determined to destroy himself; that I had been enabled to keep Faku back, and so long as he kept himself from Umyeki, I thought he had nothing to fear, but that now he had taken upon himself Umyeki’s guilt by joining him, the consequence would be that Faku would come against him. I then entreated him to keep from Umyeki, and, should Faku come, to get out of the way, and I would do all I could to help him by talking for him. But he paid very little attention



to me. What made me so desirous of preventing an union with Umyeki, was a desire to prevent a quarrel with Faku. Faku has many times threatened to come against the tribes around Morley, but by the influence of the Missionaries at Buntingville and Morley has been prevented. Umyeki's design was to get all the Captains on this side the river to join him, when he supposed he should be able to defend himself, and thus all the country be involved in war; and no doubt in the end Faku would have destroyed them all. I am therefore thankful that Umyeki failed in his plan; and should Cetani suffer, it will be a lesson to others not to despise the advice of the Missionary, as it will show them that his plan of sitting still is best. On hearing that Umyeki had some prisoners which he had taken in the battle, I feared he would do the same as he did last year, viz., put them to death, (for it must be remembered, this is the man who put to death a Captain he had taken in war, afterwards broiled his liver, mixed it with water in his skull, and inoculated his own people therewith to make them strong,) unless I interfered to prevent it. From the character of the man, I did not go without fully examining my motives. Finding them pure, and believing myself to be in the path of duty, I committed myself to God, and went, accompanied by eight of the people belonging to the Station. We were not perceived until very near Umyeki; when I called for him, and upon his appearing informed him that, hearing he was at the cattle place belonging to the Station, I came down to see, and wished to know, if he was travelling through or stopping, he replied, "I am running away from my enemies. I see people sit in peace near you, and hear that Cetani and you are one; I am therefore come here to be quiet, and to be one with Cetani." I answered, "No Captain knows of my coming. I have done it of my own accord, as I

heard you were here, and am come to see if I cannot help to make peace between you and Faku, as well as the Amatembu. You know a Missionary always wants peace, and I am willing to help you in any way towards bringing about a reconciliation, so that you may either remain here in peace, or return home. But I can give no answer about your remaining here, unless something be done towards such a reconciliation ; and, in the first place, I shall expect you to deliver to me the prisoners you took in battle."

When I informed Umyeki "they were taken in their own country, defending themselves, and belong to Captains connected with the Station ; and as this place belongs to the Station, they cannot be kept here, as that would be like making them prisoners on their own place," he replied—"Their fathers must come and redeem them with cattle." But as I perceived I had made some impression upon him by my remarks, I was resolved to follow it up, and therefore replied—"How can you call for cattle to release persons who are not bound at your place, but on the place belonging to the Station? I therefore shall take them away with me." At this he seemed exceedingly angry ; but after much contending, he brought two men from behind a bush, and delivered them to me, saying, "I have no more." One was a young captain, and the other his servant. Umyeki was in a great rage when he gave them up, and said—"Though you are come, there shall not be peace. You say you come for peace, but so long as any of you Missionaries are in the land there shall be war." I then informed him, that as he had given up the prisoners, I would hear what he had to say, and was ready to render him any assistance in my power, by talking for him if he would give me a word to Faku ; for he was too angry to attend to anything I said.

We then returned home, bringing with us the two

persons we had rescued ; and never was I so forcibly struck with the words of the Psalmist---“ We were like them that dream,” for the young captain walked in perfect silence by my horse until he ascended the hill leading from the valley in which Umyeki was ; and when he had reached the top, and saw the surrounding country, he exclaimed---“ It is true ! I thought I was dreaming, but it is true ! I am free from Umyeki !”

On our arrival at home, we met two persons belonging to the Captain, and one of them, with his heart full of joy, and his eyes full of tears, ran home to inform the father of his son’s safety.

From the young man I learned that they were surrounded by persons when it was announced that I was coming, and that some of them said---“ We must kill the prisoners immediately ;” but there was not sufficient time before I called the Captain away ; and that it was taking up his attention, so as not to allow him time to give the order, which prevented their being killed. He says they heard me demanding them, and had resolved to rush through their guards towards me, had any violence been offered them.

The following morning the old Captain, accompanied by several others, together with a great number of councillors, came to the Station. After they had sat a little, I called the young man forward, to present him to his father. The old man, upon seeing him, covered his face for some considerable time. The son did the same ; and after they had given vent to their feelings by a flood of tears (in which all joined), the father broke the silence by saying---“ I thank---I thank ! I see my son ! I never expected to see my son again, for I know what has been done to others who were taken prisoners by the same person.”

O the feast of doing good! Never shall I forget the pleasure I experienced in restoring the old man his son.

During the whole of January we were in a state of great anxiety in consequence of the movements of Umyeki. Sometimes we feared an attack from him out of revenge, and at other times thought it likely that Capaa (who, it seems, is determined to attack Umyeki, because he denies calling him in October last against Cokaz) might do us injury in the night. Persons were therefore appointed to guard every night.

*February 11th.*—I went to see the Chief Sinama, and found him very ill. I collected the people and preached to them. Sinama, though an old man, would not acknowledge, and indeed seemed angry at being told sickness and old age would soon bring him to death.

*Sunday, 16th.*—This morning Tingwani (Sinama's son), with several of his men, passed through the Station. They informed me Sinami was worse, and they were going to another doctor, according to the direction of the one already employed. I informed them that I did not think any doctor could effect a cure—still they did right in consulting the doctors; but at the same time I hoped they would not employ any witch-doctor.

Soon after they left the Station, I learned they were going to hold a dance, as the witch-doctor had called them; and fearing some lives would be lost, I considered it my duty to go after them, and endeavour to dissuade them from going: therefore, leaving the school to Mrs. Palmer's care, and directing the people to hold a prayer-meeting, and to give an exhortation, I left home, and after an hour's riding overtook them, when I informed the Captain, Tingwani, that there had been a misunderstanding between us in the morning, and that I said they did right to go for another

doctor, because I thought it was not a witch-doctor, but finding that to be the case, I had followed, and hoped they would take my advice, especially as it was the Lord's day. They replied they should be considered the murderers of their old Captain if they did not observe the customs of the country, and therefore could not consent to return without going to the doctor. I then informed them that if the Captain would give me his word that no one should be put to death, I would return home ; but finding he would not, I thought it best to remain, and therefore followed them to the doctor. There were about forty persons belonging to Sinama present, and on their arrival at the doctor's they seated themselves in a semicircle, and the doctor and his friends in a line in front of them. In a short time a woman came into the circle, and commenced dancing, jumping, &c. in the most disgusting manner, saying—"The Captain must not die alone; some one has killed him, and must therefore die with him." After this woman left the circle came a man, who continued dancing, singing, &c. for a long time, and repeatedly said—"You are killing the Captain, and the great doctor shall point out the person;" to the whole of which Sinama's people said, "We agree." Then came the great doctor, who continued jumping in the same way as the others for a considerable time. At length when all the doctors were thus tired, I embraced the opportunity which their silence gave me of explaining to the people my reasons for being there, as well as to set before them their sin in thus breaking the Sabbath, and the awful end such practices would bring them to. When the doctors had rested a little, they began again, and soon Sinama's people were informed they must pay, as the doctor was about to point out the person who had bewitched the Captain. Some gave their spears, others their ornaments, &c., in addition to the

young bullock they had brought ; which being done, all on the doctor's side of the circle rose with their spears, and fearing some one would be killed, I went into the middle of the circle to intimidate the doctor, and to rescue the unhappy man, whoever it might be, before they had time to destroy him. The doctor was evidently confused; and after dancing some time, he retired to consult the other doctors, during which time every eye was anxiously fixed on the doctor, no one knowing on whom the charge of bewitching the Captain would fall. I kept between the doctor and Sinama's people; and at length the doctor said, the person who had bewitched the Captain was not present, but he gave the name, and a description of his person, to which the others objected, saying—"There is no such person living among us." The doctor replied—"I have given the name, and can do no more;" when the others answered—"You have given no proper name, nor do we know any one that answers to the description you give, and therefore we shall have what we paid you back again."

When the whole was thus ended, I addressed the doctors on the danger they were in of being destroyed by that God whose Sabbath they despised, that they had greatly sinned, that I came to prevent any one from being injured, and, as the servant of God, I could not allow such practices without lifting up my voice against it. The doctors made no reply, but evidently were glad that no proper name had been given.

Before I went into the circle, the doctor seemed to pay very little attention to my being present; and from what I could hear, it seems he intended to fix on three persons, who no doubt would have been killed on the spot, as the Captain informed me in the morning he could not save the person the doctor named.

It is altogether impossible for me to describe what my feelings were during the time I witnessed these children of the devil go through their enchantments. When I thought on the thousands in my native land who were worshipping God, and keeping holiday, of the goodness of God in appointing a Sabbath, and then to witness such scenes on that most holy day, I was compelled to retire to a bush, and give vent to my feelings by tears.

This is the first witch-doctor's dance I have heard of in this neighbourhood since I have been at Morley, and I thus had an opportunity of bearing my testimony against it; and though it is not likely the doctors will give up their gain, it will at least be a check upon their holding dances on the Sabbath.

Upon my return home, I found that cattle had been taken away from a kraal near the Station, when a battle would have ensued, but for the interference of the people belonging to the Station.

*February 28th.*—Nkosian and about twelve or fifteen other Amatembu captains, assembled at the station, to say they were in constant fear of Capaai, whose spies were in their country, and wished me to write to Colonel Somerset, the commandant of Cafferland, to come to their help. Thinking that a word from the colony would be more likely than anything else to make Capaai sit in peace, I promised to do so, observing to them, I could not engage that the authorities in the colony would attend to it, but I would send their request, and thereby show that I did not hinder them from communicating with the colony; and at the same time I would send word to Capaai, requesting him to sit still.

*March 3d.*—Nkosian sent to say, that from news he had just received from Faku, it appeared they were in danger of being destroyed by Capaai; I therefore sent word to Bun-

tingville, requesting Faku to take care of the Amatembu captains, who were near Morley, and to stop Capaai should he be coming this way.

In consequence of Faku's having made arrangements to come with his army against Umyeki, the brethren Davis and Satchell, who had heard of it, arrived here about ten o'clock, P.M., to render me any assistance in their power.

The Umtata river rising suddenly, in consequence of rain in the interior, and continuing up for some time, prevented Faku from coming.

*5th.*—I went to Gaya's, a Captain who lives near the station, on hearing they were about to kill a man for bewitching Gaiya. I found a man bound, and upon inquiry learned that the witch-doctor had accused two of the Captain's wives of bewitching their husband; the women, having been tortured, accused Quobili, the Captain's younger brother, which they did with a view to save themselves, being recommended thereto by some of the principal men.

The whole of the councillors, together with the son of Gaiya, who is to succeed his father, were assembled, and sitting in a circle. At a little distance from them sat Quobili, apparently in the greatest anguish of mind. He was trembling exceedingly, expecting every moment that he would be put to death. I inquired of the young Captain the cause of the man's being bound. He seemed unwilling to inform me; but at length replied, "He has been killing the Captain." I then went into the house to see the Captain, and found him very ill. His mind was as dark as midnight on everything connected with God and his soul; and he appeared to pay but little attention to what was said on the all-important subject—eternity. He consented to take medicine if I would give it him. I then went to the son and



councillors, and spoke to them on the folly and wickedness of their conduct in torturing persons for a sickness which God had sent the Captain. All they could say was, the doctors accused them, and they were finding out the bewitching matter. During this time the poor man continued weeping and trembling; at length he cried out, "U Pama! (Palmer) I want to go with you! Let me go with you now!" Upon which I addressed the councillors, saying, "It is usual in this land to afford protection to any one who claims it in distress. I cannot refuse to let this man go with me, and shall therefore take him to the Station; if he has done wrong bring his accusers to the Station; and if you prove any thing against him worthy of punishment, I shall not object to its being inflicted; but until that be proved, the man is under my protection, and no one shall hurt him." They replied, "You are killing the Captain." But as they were indebted to the Missionary Station for their protection, they could not prevent my taking the man home; accordingly one of the people belonging to the Station loosed the man, and he ran like a hart before my horse to the Station. The brethren Satchell and Davis kindly accompanied me to Gaiya's kraal.

The tribe above referred to is not a very large one; and would long since have been destroyed by their more powerful neighbours, were it not that they live near the missionary, who is always ready to step in as mediator, and hitherto he has been successful. This, of course, gives the missionary considerable influence, which I considered it my duty to use, when I saw that by it I could save the life of a fellow-creature. On my arrival at the Station I found that the man I had released was younger brother to the sick Captain; and I have no doubt was selected by the doctor because the young Captain was jealous of his influence.

The man had been seized at his own residence, and dragged to the great place, his wife never expecting to see him again; but on hearing that I had been to the great place, she came to me, and great was her joy to find her husband here. They both wept for joy. She inquired how he got away, when pointing to me he replied, "Had it not been for him I should not see the sun now;" and the wife informed him that immediately after he was taken away they seized all his cattle; and in a few days I learned that the Captain had taken possession of his corn-land: however, I prevailed upon him to give up the latter. In the afternoon I again went with the medicine, but was informed by the councillors that the Captain could not take it, in consequence of some individual being absent, which I knew was equivalent to a refusal to take the medicine. The following day I heard the Captain was dead. This Captain was the only one living near the Station that would not attend preaching.

A short time after the above affair took place, the young Captain who had succeeded his father came to the Station on business; and when the man I had rescued saw him, he went into his house to prevent any angry feeling on the part of the Captain, which when he saw, addressing himself to me, he said, "Why does Quobili go into his house when I come? This is God's place, and here we lay aside every thing; he therefore should not run away, for on this place we can sit and talk together." I then called the man, and they were together for some time; since which period I have often seen them conversing on the Station.

I more than once offered the Captain to have an investigation of this witchcraft affair, that the man may be punished if deserving it, but he declined it; and the last time I mentioned it, he said, "It is all over, and I never wish to have the subject introduced again."

The man whom I rescued refuses to leave the station; and my prayer is, that this deliverance may lead to a greater, even the salvation of his soul. His wife and child are come to reside with him.

*March 13th.*—I heard that two persons were found dead near the station. I therefore went to see, and found the two bodies in the bed of the Imbozisi river. Their karosses were on the side of the river, a few yards lower down than themselves. They were in a state of perfect nudity, and from the manner in which their karosses, ornaments, &c., were placed on the bank, it was clear that they had been taken off very deliberately, as the strings with which they had been fastened were not broken. They were both in the water, and in the same position, viz., on their knees and face, with their hands extended, but the water was not deep enough to cover more than one-half of the body. The man was a little in advance of the woman, and from their heels being towards their ornaments, &c., it would seem they walked into the water, determined to destroy themselves, or that the one succeeded in murdering the other and then himself. It appears they were husband and wife, but lately had lived together very unhappily. A short time ago, the man lent his wife to another man, on the condition that that man lent him his wife for the same time; after which, the woman found dead was accused by her husband of cohabiting with another man besides the one to whom he had lent her, and the last time they were seen together alive, they were quarrelling on the subject. Had I consulted my own feelings, I should not have written the above; but as it will give you a fair specimen of the morals in this land, I considered it my duty to do violence to my own feelings of delicacy, that you may see the wretched state of the in-

habitants of this part of South Africa; and it must be kept in mind the above parties were among the higher ranks, the man being the son of a principal councillor in one of the tribes.

*May 8th.*—I received a letter from Colonel Somerset, to be forwarded to Capaai. The Colonel, who is ever ready to assist the missionary in preserving peace, desired Capaai to refrain from disturbing the people near Morley. On the receipt of this, I called the captains together to inform them what the Colonel said. They thanked me for the news, and said, as the letter was in English, I must go myself, and read it to Capaai. In addition to which they said, “No person could be found among them that would trust himself at Capaai’s place, and as I had hitherto helped them, I must now go to Capaai with the letter from the great men; and as their request seemed reasonable, I engaged to do it, not doubting but God would preserve me.”

*May 14th, 1834.*—I sit down to give you an account of my visit to the marauding chief, Capaai, which I undertook at the earnest request of the chiefs in this neighbourhood.

I left home this morning, accompanied by my interpreter and three of the people belonging to the Station, and in the evening arrived at Buntingville.

*15th.*—Attended by Mr. Satchell, together with those who accompanied me from home, I left Buntingville this morning, and in our way to Capaai called on Faku, the great Amapondo Chief, to inform him of the nature of our visit to Capaai, which, when he had heard, he approved of. In the afternoon we crossed the noble river named **Zimvoo-**

boo (river of Hippopotami), and very properly so called, for as our path lay near the banks of the river, and but a few miles from the sea, we heard a great number of those enormous animals very near us, as we followed our guide, who conducted us through the forest by the paths made by those animals; but as it was dark we could not see them. About ten o'clock P.M., we arrived at a place belonging to one of the Natal traders, where we slept.

16th.—In consequence of rain we could not leave until late; and after a tiresome journey, through very broken country, in a line with the coast, we reached Capaai's people. Every thing around us had the appearance of war, and the manner in which the houses are placed round the cattle-fold showed very clearly that they were a people not accustomed to sit in peace. A little before sunset we arrived at Capaai's great place. The grass in many places was above our heads when on horseback; and as it had rained much during the preceding night and that morning, we were thoroughly wet, and the hills were so exceedingly steep, that our horses were of no use to us in many places. It was therefore with great difficulty we could ascend some of the hills, for, in addition to the ascent, the ground was particularly slippery from the rain; but sometimes on horseback, sometimes on foot, and at others by pulling ourselves up by the assistance of the grass, we urged on our way.

Upon inquiry, we found that Capaai was at a distant kraal, and a messenger was sent for him. Understanding the man would not reach his captain until after dark, we accepted their invitation to sleep there. We did this because we considered ourselves in the path of duty; and as by circumstances, over which we had no control, our arrival

was so late, we thought our way was clear to remain there during the night. It is true we could not forget that we were in danger, and knowing the character of "the man of blood," felt some degree of anxiety. As he had never seen a Missionary before, we knew not what kind of treatment to expect, more especially as I went with a request from the Colonial Authorities to sit still, and thereby was thwarting his views. However, we knew that the One in whose service we were engaged had said—"Lo! I am with you;" therefore we laid ourselves down and slept in the hut they had lent us.

*May 17th.*—This morning, just as we were preparing for family prayer, we saw Capaai coming. On his arrival we informed him we were about to worship God, and hoped he and his people would join us; upon which he went and called them together, when we sang a hymn in Caffer: I read and made a few remarks on the Commandments, and prayed, and then Mr. Satchell's interpreter prayed in Caffer.

After informing Capaai that we did the same every morning and evening, I proceeded to state to him the object of my visit, and read the letter from the Commandant, to which he replied—"When I went against Cokaz it was at the second request of Umyeki, and now I have put myself under Faku. I am sitting still and building, nor shall I go out to war again unless called by Faku. I am still, and wish you to send a teacher to live with me, and then he can himself see what I am doing."

I then recommended him to sit in peace, and he concluded by again urging me to send him a teacher. I informed him that was too great for me to talk about, but I would send his request to our fathers, over the great waters. Thus have

we another call, and that to a marauding chief of great power, who is the terror of the whole country.

Capaai killed a beast, as a proof of his friendly disposition towards us, the greater part of which was eaten by them without any kind of cooking. Such wild people as Capaai's I never saw before; they seem capable of doing any thing, and I am not surprised that they are the dread of the whole country.

After our return to Buntingville, we went to Faku, and informed him what Capaai had said, to which he replied—"The Amatembu should not have run away; tell them to sit and build."

Upon the whole I see much to be grateful for in this visit, especially as it is the first time any Missionaries have crossed the Zimvooboo; and we found favour in the sight of those to whom we went.

The following circumstance must not be passed over without notice. Some time since a few of Capaai's people, being at Buntingville on the Sabbath, attended the chapel; and as we were sitting in the hut at Capaai's place, several of the people came in and sat with us for some time: we asked them various questions about God, Heaven, &c. &c., and were much surprised as well as pleased to hear some give satisfactory answers; and upon our inquiring where they learned these things, they informed us they heard it at the school: this encourages us to sow beside all waters. We know not where the incorruptible seed will be carried which we sow on our Stations.

*October 16th.*—I am exceedingly sorry that I am not able to inform you of peace being at length restored in our neighbourhood. In consequence of Umyeki being driven from his former residence by Faku, he has placed

himself near the Station, and consequently near the Amatembu. Between Umyeki and Amatembu there has been war for these several years past; and now that they are near together, the temptation to steal cattle, by way of retaliation, seems too great for the Amatembu to resist. On several occasions, they have stolen cattle lately, but, by the interference of the Missionary, open war has hitherto been prevented.

By the following extracts from my journal, you will see, that this is truly a land of darkness and of blood; but that, in the midst of all, we are not without encouragement.

*July 14th.*—I heard that three of Faku's men, who were coming to see their friends at this Station, had fallen into the hands of a company of Umyeki's men that were hunting. I sent off messengers to make inquiry.

*15th.*—This morning the messengers returned, from whom I learned that one man had been killed, and the other made prisoner; but they succeeded in procuring the release of the latter, and brought him with them to the Station.

In the afternoon, accompanied by my assistant and a few men, I went to inter the murdered man. We discovered the body in a valley not far from Morley, and found that every kind of ornament, as beads, rings, &c., had been taken off; that the head had been beaten with clubs; that one deep wound had been made by an assagai; that both legs were nearly severed, by cuts under the knees, and that one foot was almost cut off, just above the heel. This agrees with the account given by the man who escaped to the station with the news, viz.: That, when they were taken, and stated they were on their way to this Station, some of the party pro-



posed letting them all go, whilst others contended for having them all put to death; and, after a long debate, it was determined that one should be set at liberty, one taken prisoner, and the other killed; that immediately after releasing the one, they commenced beating the other on the head with their large sticks or clubs, and, supposing him to be dead, went off towards home with (him) their prisoner, and that he saw nothing more of his companion: but, as they were proceeding, one of the company on looking back saw the body move; upon which some persons were sent back to cut the sinews of his legs and feet.

The men that accompanied me dug a grave, into which we put the body, and did what we could, by laying large stones on the top, to keep it from the wolves. Thus an active man, little more than twenty years of age, who had very recently been married, and yesterday was nimbly moving towards this place, to ask a wedding present of his uncle, (one of our members,) is no more, but is numbered with the dead. Surely the habitations of cruelty are around us; but the news we proclaim is, "Peace on earth, and good will to man:" this, and only this, can reclaim the inhabitants of this long-forgotten and deeply-degraded land. In the midst of all our difficulties we are encouraged, knowing that "the Gospel is the power of God," and that it "is mighty to the pulling down of strong holds."

*Sunday, August 4th.*—Early this morning, shields were seen moving in all directions; and upon inquiry I found that Umyeki's men were following the foot-marks of cattle they had lost in the night. Fearing the consequences would be serious, I considered it my duty to interfere, though it was the Sabbath; and therefore, leaving the school to the care of Mrs. P., I rode, accompanied by the assistant and

my interpreter, after Umyeki's men. In a short time I saw a house burning, and a great number of men at a distance with cattle: we therefore left the main road and met them in the valleys, when we found that they were Umyeki's men, who, after setting fire to the house, were returning with a large herd of cattle, together with all the plunder they could find among the Amatembu, two or three hundred of whom were following at a distance asking for their cattle. Umyeki's men had the cattle in front, and several hundreds of the men were loitering behind, singing their war-song and defying the Amatembu, by which means they had drawn them into a place where they could easily have turned round upon them and destroyed the whole; for the plundered Amatembu were so anxious about their cattle, that they were quite unconscious of their danger: it was just at this time we arrived, and got between them. We endeavoured to learn, from Umyeki's men, the cause of all the disturbance, but they would not stop longer than to say " We have lost our cattle, and these are now ours." Finding it impossible to have any explanation, we went forward with them, until we found that crossing the next rivulet, and ascending the hill immediately before us, would bring us into Umyeki's country. Seeing this, I rode forward and turned the cattle, and before Umyeki's main body came up, the men from our station arrived, into whose charge I gave the cattle, and informed Umyeki's Commander that the cattle should go with me to the Station, and the news be heard to-morrow, (as we could not talk over such matters on the Sabbath,) when we would endeavour to find out the thieves and set all right. To this he consented, saying, " Yes; what you do will be right, as we found on a former occasion;" but immediately after, when the main body came up, a general muster was made by Umyeki's men, who sur-

rounded both us and the cattle, declaring they would fight rather than allow the cattle to go. They were all prepared for action, and one man took out his assagai to stab one of the people belonging to the Station; but, as this would be taken for a signal to commence, I immediately rode up to the man, succeeded in frustrating his design, and at length, after much trouble, we were permitted to take home the cattle.

During the time we were contending about the cattle, the Amatembu from a distance collected on the hills on the one side, and Umyeki's men soon mustered on the opposite hills, so that in a short time the former amounted to between two and three thousand, and the latter to about one thousand.

The Amatembu, finding themselves superior in point of number, were exceedingly anxious to make an attack; I feared that, after all, there would be a battle; and in the midst of their songs of defiance, (as they sat on the opposite hills,) I was ready to give up all in despair. I took courage, and again urged the Amatembu Captains to return: but no sooner had I succeeded with one than another with his clan would arrive, and begin to state the injury Umyeki had done him, and call out for revenge; and as soon as I had prevailed upon him to be quiet another would arrive, saying "Where is my father's head that Umyeki took?" and then call upon the other Captains to remind them all of the injuries they had sustained from the same enemy;—by these means all would be roused again, and every heart burned with revenge, whilst savage rage was depicted in every countenance. However, trusting in the Lord, I was determined to persevere, and, by the blessing of God, succeeded in prevailing upon all the Amatembu Captains to return home. It was well they did; for though no more

than one thousand of Umyeki's men could be seen, yet several Captains who were his friends had assembled their men, and were behind the hill ready to assist Umyeki, had any attack been made upon him.

*5th.*—To-day, one of the Amatembu Captains sent twelve head of Umyeki's cattle, and stated that he and some other Captains had been employed all day in discovering the thieves; adding, that they had not been able to recover more yet, but in haste sent those to convince me that they did not want to make war, and also to show Umyeki that his cattle would be restored.

*6th, 7th, and 8th.*—Nearly the whole of these days have been occupied in hearing the above case. Umyeki's men endeavoured to make their loss greater than it really was, and the various cross-examinations by the Amatembu consumed so much time, that even now it is not brought to a close.

Five more of the stolen cattle were returned by the same Amatembu Captain who restored the former lot. He informed me that some young men in his tribe stole the cattle, without giving any notice of their intention to do so when they left home; and that Umyeki sent him no word about the cattle, but took up his shield and plundered other persons: he therefore thanked me for my interference, and said, if I continued to interest myself in the case, it would be settled with words.

It appears Umyeki's men missed their cattle, and immediately followed the footmarks; but on perceiving that it would lead them among a people they had greatly injured, and into a part of the country with which they were unacquainted, they were afraid to proceed. They therefore left

that tribe, took another course, and came suddenly upon another clan of the Amatembu, not at all connected with the former, and made an attack upon one village, burned one house, stripped the women of their clothes, ornaments, &c., and then drove off all the cattle; so that the innocent were suffering, and, to all human appearance, the men would have lost their lives in foolishly following their cattle, had it not been for the interference of the Missionary: but now all has been settled in a peaceable manner, each party getting his own cattle; and they have all expressed themselves as being grateful for the interference.

---

## APPENDIX IV.

Some particulars connected with the recent irruption of the Caffers along the Eastern Frontier of the Colony.

As but a few unconnected statements have appeared from time to time in the journals of this country relative to the recent rupture with the Caffers, and deeming that a detailed account could not be otherwise than interesting at this moment, the Author has selected the following particulars principally from the 'Graham's Town Journal,' published at the immediate seat of war, the most authentic source of information, tending to show the nature of this species of Guerilla warfare, and the miseries inseparable from an overwhelming invasion by a wild and savage people.

The first intimation that appears to have been received of the hostile intentions of the Caffers towards the Colony reached Graham's Town about the 18th of December, 1834.

The journal of that date contains the following particulars :

Information has reached Graham's Town to the effect that the Caffers have again made an audacious attack upon a party of military sent into their territory in pursuit of stolen cattle. We learn that the attack completely succeeded; and that it required a very large proportion of the force stationed at Forts Wiltshire and Beaufort to secure a safe retreat to the beaten patrole within the Colonial limits. We scarcely know

whether or not to complain of the conduct of the Caffers in affairs of this kind; they have an unquestionable right to defend their territory against the inroads of the colonial troops; and if we are to have no other system adopted than that of 'might is right,' let us look to it that in future no patrols, consisting of about a dozen men, and headed by a mere stripling, be sent across the border to beard a whole nation within their own limits."

Immediately after this affair, the whole country appears to have been thrown into a state of the greatest consternation from the alarming inroads of the Caffers. "It is impossible," says the same journal, "accurately to describe the state of excitement into which Graham's Town and neighbourhood have been thrown, by the audacious and menacing Caffers. It appears that the fracas arose out of an indulgence which had been granted to the Caffers, to re-occupy temporarily the ceded country. Some horses had been stolen, and having been traced by Lieutenant Sutton to a kraal situated there, he seized a number of cattle by way of restitution, with which he was returning towards his post. The Caffers, however, collected in considerable force, and showed every disposition to dispute his progress. Finding himself greatly pressed, this officer collected his little force, and defended himself with great judgment and gallantry, in the course of which, it is said, several Caffers were killed, whilst one of his party was severely wounded by an assagai. The Commandant upon receiving a report of this affair, proceeded with the utmost celerity to the spot; soon after which he perceived that the Caffers were in a state of considerable excitement, and that there was every reason to apprehend from them a determined attack. As many as two thousand were seen at one point, and it was apparent that their first

object was to attack the isolated farms and carry off the cattle. Intelligence of these proceedings speedily reached Graham's Town, and reinforcements were instantly dispatched to the frontier line. In the mean time a party of six farmers were attacked, and one of their number killed; various herds of cattle were swept off, and the whole country roused by the movements of the audacious plunderers. Certain information at length reached town, that the enemy had been seen in considerable force within a distance of not more than twenty or thirty miles; and it did not appear unlikely that a similar scene might be witnessed to that exhibited in 1819."

Prompt and vigorous measures were taken by the inhabitants for the protection of the place, and the security of the women and children. On the afternoon of Monday (22nd) a number of the most respectable householders formed themselves into a mounted patrol, and during the night traversed the thickets as well as the heights around the town. The same precaution had been adopted by the military, sentinels having been placed by Lieutenant-Colonel England on all the prominent points adjacent thereto. On Tuesday the rumours were still more alarming. Five hundred and thirty head of cattle, and two thousand six hundred sheep had been taken from the farm of Mr. J. Howse, on the Fish River, and the messenger who brought the intelligence declared that a certain hill overlooking the farm was literally red or covered with Caffers.

Mr. H. W. Henderson, a most respectable merchant of Graham's Town, and who happened to be out on a visit at the residence of his father-in-law, Mr. T. Mahony, was with Mr. Mahony cruelly murdered. He was, with the family of the latter, endeavouring to escape in a waggon from the farm to the military post at Caffer's Drift, when



they were waylaid and dispatched with assagais. Mrs. Mahony and a child of Mr. Henderson were allowed to escape.

25th.—Further reports were received from various quarters of the daring advance of the Caffers, in such numbers, that successful resistance to their progress was utterly impracticable; the scattered inhabitants, in every direction, were compelled to fly from their dwellings, either to an adjacent village, or to concentrate in some spot where they might act on their defence with some prospect of holding out for a short time against the invaders. During Thursday night every precaution was taken at Graham's Town for a determined stand in case of attack; most of the women and children were received into the flat-roofed houses around the Church-square, or took refuge in the church; waggons were drawn across the different entrances; guards and patrols, both mounted and on foot, posted around the town, and every man was under arms. On Friday morning a party of twenty of the inhabitants, mounted and well armed, proceeded to the scene of the savage butchery of Messrs. Mahony and Henderson—one of the most intricate and dangerous defiles along the frontier line.

No opposition was, however, offered to this little band of volunteers, and they at length reached the spot where the deed had been perpetrated, and where a scene presented itself of the most appalling description. The waggon with which the unfortunate individuals were proceeding to Caffer's Drift had been overturned; the property had been carefully examined—apparently for arms and ammunition—the beds and bolsters cut open, and the contents scattered around; near the hind wheels lay the body of Mr. Henderson, covered with assagai wounds; and a short distance in advance, the corpse of poor Mahony, who had received a

frightful wound in the neck, into which he had apparently endeavoured to thrust a portion of his shirt, in the vain attempt to staunch the blood. The party having covered the bodies, proceeded to the dwelling-house of the deceased, which had been completely sacked by the marauders; they then examined the scene of the murder of Cramer, mentioned last week, whose body they interred as well as they could in a wolf-hole. At night the party reached town in safety. The following day another party proceeded with a waggon, determined to bring in the dead bodies, and they succeeded in their object, as also in recovering the body of a trader named Kirkman, who had been murdered near the Fish River Drift. On Saturday morning, 27th, a mounted patrol, consisting of twenty-one persons, proceeded to scour the country through Howison's Poort, along the skirts of the Kariga River. They had dismounted for the purpose of grazing their horses for a few minutes, when their attention was attracted by the cries of females, and a call for assistance from a farm-house immediately below them. Observing a man galloping furiously forward, and beckoning to them to follow, they instantly rode after him, and shortly came to a spot where a party of three farmers were defending themselves against about three hundred Caffers, who had attacked them near a certain bush a short distance off, and with whom the three farmers were then hotly engaged. The latter had taken refuge in a thick clump of bush, and were, with the most determined gallantry, defending themselves by keeping up a fire upon the assailants. At the approach of the patrol, the Caffers scampered off to the adjoining jungle; and there they found the three brave men—two brothers, named Ferreira, and one named Cobus Buurman, in a most pitiable situation. One of them had received numerous severe wounds, particularly in the abdo-

men, so that his intestines had protruded, and were lying on the ground; another was also dangerously wounded; whilst the third, who had no gun, was uninjured. The bush was thickly strewed with assagais—most of them new, and of a very superior description; fifty-three of which were collected and brought to town. The patrol, observing a waggon a short distance from the spot, despatched a message for it. On its arrival it was found to contain Mrs. Howison, on her way home; and there is no question but her life was saved by the providential appearance of the patrol. The wounded men were placed in this vehicle, and reached town in the evening. One of them has since died. The bravery with which this poor fellow defended himself is remarkable; many of the assagais which wounded him he drew from his own body, and hurled back upon his savage assailants.

Mr. John Brown, who was with Messrs. Mahony and Henderson when they were murdered, arrived in town, and made a statement to the following effect:—That on the day in question he was proceeding towards his own farm, when, on passing the residence of Mr. Mahony, that person came out in great alarm, stating it to be his intention to proceed with his family towards Graham's Town. He suggested that it would be better to proceed to Caffer Drift Post. Mahony, however, produced a letter from Major Lowen, stating that he had not sufficient force to relieve him. Notwithstanding this, they decided at length to proceed there; they had not, however, proceeded far, when a body of Caffers passed about one hundred yards before them, and it was apparent that they were being surrounded. He was a little before the waggon, and on turning back he found that the oxen had been cut out, and that Mr. Mahony was lying murdered on the ground. He and his son fled into the

bush. Here they dismounted from their horses, threw the bridles and saddles away, and turned their horses loose. Whilst they remained concealed in a thicket, a party of about fifty Caffers crossed towards the colony, and returned soon afterwards with about four hundred head of cattle, which they divided into different lots, and proceeded with them towards the Kap River heights. They heard Caffers all night round them, and it appeared to him that they were in considerable force. After several hairbreadth escapes, Mr. Brown and his son, in a state of great exhaustion, fell in with the party who went out to recover the bodies of Messrs. Henderson and Mahony, and were conveyed by them to town.

A dispatch was received by the civil commissioner from Lieut.-Col. Somerset. It stated that the Caffers were pouring into the colony in incredible numbers, and were sweeping everything before them. He computed that during the four preceding days, not less than ten thousand head of cattle had been carried off. To repel the invaders was utterly impossible; his horses were knocked up, and there was not a single burgher who could afford him any assistance. Equally gloomy was the intelligence from Bathurst—the other extremity of the district. A communication from a committee of safety which had been appointed there, stated, that in consequence of the alarming state of the country, the inhabitants of that part had abandoned their homes and property and fled; that the new church at Bathurst was filled with those unfortunate and destitute people; and that the remainder were exposed in their waggons. It went on to state that on Christmas day the Caffers attacked the cattle in the most daring manner, and succeeded in carrying off a great number; that they were kept in the most feverish state of excitement in conse-

quence of their very insufficient means of defence, being but few in number, whilst many had no other weapons than pitch-forks or bayonets. Those who had horses were constantly on duty patrolling; that many of their horses were knocked up; and that these and other exertions could not be continued unless they received assistance. This dispatch concluded by stating that it had been reported to them that the Caffers were approaching in considerable numbers, and that consequently their position would be quite untenable, as their supply of water, allowing they could defend themselves in the church, might be entirely cut off. Under these circumstances, advice was requested as to the propriety of retiring on Graham's Town with their families, and sending their cattle in the direction of Algoa Bay, or elsewhere, as might eventually be decided on. They implored a reinforcement of men, which was the more necessary, as a number of young men, under Lieut. Forbes, who had been sent thither as an escort with ammunition, and who had been extremely active, were about to return to their respective homes.

The reply to this communication was of the most heart-rending character. It stated the utter impossibility of sending assistance; and recommended them to abandon that beautiful and interesting village, and thus to avail themselves of the communication then open with Graham's Town. This advice was followed, the whole of that part of the country is depopulated; the dwellings of the inhabitants ravaged and burnt; large herds of cattle, and beautiful flocks of Merino sheep abandoned, a prey to the wolves, or to the still more savage hordes of barbarians. Families who a few days before were living in peace and in comfort, were now cast upon the world utterly destitute, the proceeds of more than fourteen years' arduous and incessant exertions

swept off at one fell swoop, and they themselves cast upon the world houseless wanderers. A communication from this place, stating the determination to abandon the village, has the following affecting passage:—"I have much pleasure in mentioning the good feeling which exists amongst us under all these distressing circumstances. We leave behind the whole of our property and cattle, the result of fifteen years' hard labour and perseverance, and are reduced to mere beggary. The conveyances we have will not contain the women and children; many will have to walk, as some of the waggons are without oxen, the Caffers having stolen them. On their route several parties of Caffers presented themselves, and were gallantly pursued by the young men who formed the escort. In these skirmishes two Caffers were killed, and several wounded."

During the whole of Sunday the 28th accounts kept pouring in from various quarters, all of the same gloomy character, and plainly shewing that the whole of that part of the colony extending from the Winterberg to the sea, and from the Mancanzana to the Bushman's River, and containing at least six thousand square miles, was entirely in the occupation of the Caffers; that they had swept off nearly the whole of the cattle; and that the inhabitants who had been spared were plunged into a state of the most distressing destitution.

St. George's church presented a scene equally novel and affecting: instead of being used for divine worship as usual, nothing was heard but the din of arms, and the noise and bustle of a guard-house in a time of war. About nine at night divine worship was performed by the Acting District Chaplain, amidst an assemblage, which presented a scene that could not fail to awaken the most painful and interesting associations. The gallery was principally filled with females and children, driven from their

homes,—reduced from comfort to absolute destitution by the savage enemy, whilst the floor was occupied by men leaning on their arms. The morning lesson (Isaiah xxxvii.) was singularly appropriate to our situation, and the Minister, instead of a sermon, made a few remarks on several passages, pointing out their applicability, and encouraging the people to trust in HIM before whom all the nations of earth are but as the dust of the balance.

All the dispatches from the several out-posts concurred in showing the futility of the present force on the frontier attempting to offer any effectual resistance to the invaders; and it became the general opinion, that the only effectual plan would be to abandon every post, and concentrate at Graham's Town.

The intelligence received on the 29th from the immediate frontier was distressing in the extreme, and well calculated to fill the mind with indescribable horror, as well as to rouse every latent spark of energy to uncompromising resistance. It stated that the Missionaries in Cafferland were safe; but that all the poor traders had been butchered in cold blood. The communication from Fort Wiltshire stated, that Macomo had declared that the Missionaries and their families would be spared, but that all the traders must die. It went on to say that they had no accurate information of the number actually massacred, but they had heard of Edwards, at Burn's Hill, Warren, at the Rev. Mr. Keyser's station, belonging to the London Missionary Society, Rogers, at the Chumie, and several others. The poor man Warren was dragged from Mr. Keyser's breakfast-table, and, in spite of the entreaties of that person, murdered before his door.

Monday night Lieut.-Colonel Somerset arrived at Graham's Town from Fort Beaufort, and on Tuesday, at

noon, inspected the municipal force. The intelligence communicated by this officer corresponded in every respect with that previously received; or rather it was, if possible, of a still graver character. He stated that the Caffers were moving into the Colony in such large masses, that no military force then at his command was able to offer them any effectual resistance; that their plans appeared to be so well organized, and so ably executed, as to defy his utmost exertions and ingenuity to circumvent them; and that he considered the Colony in the most imminent danger.

On the afternoon of Tuesday the 30th, eight waggons which were on their way from Graham's Town to Caffer Drift, under an escort consisting of twelve men, were attacked immediately after they had descended the Graham's Town hill, by a large body of Caffers, of whom *fifty, who were in advance, were clothed, mounted, and armed with guns.* These were at first taken to be a patrol of Colonists, but as they came nearer, observing a number of Caffers on foot, and other suspicious circumstances, the escort halted, and were immediately attacked by the enemy; however, after firing a few shots it was observed that a large body of Caffers on foot were running swiftly, making a *detour*, with an evident intention to cut off the retreat by the pass descending to the plain. As their existence depended upon securing this pass, they instantly retreated: this was no sooner done, than the Caffers rushed upon the eight waggons, cut out the oxen, to the number of ninety-six, and drove them into the bush. An Englishman, named James Jenkins, fell a victim to the fury of the enemy, his body being found the next day lying on the road covered with wounds. The patrol kept up a skirmish with the enemy for some time, but the shots were too distant to have much effect. An express was immediately forwarded to town for assistance, and Lieut. Ross,



and a party consisting of about forty men, were instantly ordered to the spot. This party fell in with the men composing the escort, on their way to the town; and it being too late in the day to engage in any more extensive operation than that of rescuing them, they returned to town.

*January 1st, 1835.*—It appears that the Chiefs, Pato, Cobus, and Kama, have not as yet declared against the Colony, but, on the contrary, have expressed a strong desire to continue with it on terms of amity. They have shown the sincerity of their professions by undeviating kindness to every European within their territory, and by invariably affording them protection whenever it has been claimed. It seems that many of their people are dissatisfied with this line of policy, and ardently desire to share in the pillage of the Colonists. These refractory persons are daily deserting from their Chiefs and joining the ranks of the enemy; and Pato, who exercises the supreme power, is exceedingly apprehensive of being deserted by his subjects, and thus left exposed to the vengeance of the confederate chiefs. It is affirmed confidently, that were some little aid afforded to these chiefs from the Colony, they would not hesitate immediately to fall upon the enemy's rear, and thus completely check their further progress: on the other hand, one word from these Chiefs, and the whole of these tribes immediately enter the Colony, and join in the general plunder and massacre. No one not fully acquainted with the customs of the Caffers can form a correct opinion of the power which the several chiefs exercise over their vassals. An instance of this has just occurred in the case of Mr. Roberts, a trader, residing on the Beka. This young man was deservedly respected by the Caffers of that neighbourhood but when about to fly to the Colony from

the general danger, he was immediately surrounded by the very people with whom he had been living on terms of friendly intercourse: their assegais were uplifted to dispatch him, and he would in a moment have been put to death, had he not urged that Pato had pledged himself for his security. Execution was accordingly stayed until this point had been ascertained, and the answer returned was, that the lives of the aggressors should be the penalty of any infraction of his promise thus given to the individual in question. No sooner had his will been delivered, than the very persons so ready to act as the ministers of vengeance were at once changed to warm and zealous friends and protectors, and actually escorted him safely within the Colonial boundary.

In the evening the troops which had been stationed at Fort Wiltshire arrived in town, having abandoned that post. A great many families of the Dutch farmers also reached town with the remnant of their property. During the night almost every man was under arms, in hourly expectation of an attack, it being well known that the country round the town was entirely in the occupation of the enemy.

Friday night, Saturday, and Sunday, the commotion was partly hushed; no movement of importance was made on either side. The enemy, it appeared, was busily employed in conveying beyond the colonial boundaries the immense booty of which it had plundered the colony, and completing the work of ruin by the pillage of the deserted habitations, and the final destruction of them by fire. On our part the most active exertions were making to collect a force sufficiently numerous to take the field, and also to place the town in a proper posture of defence. Barricades have been thrown up in various parts of it, calculated to break the rush of the assailants, should they pour down in large masses, as is their usual custom when executing a bold and

hazardous movement; and not only so, but to afford protection to the inhabitants, should they be required to defend the place against these savage barbarians. During this period, reinforcements began to arrive from various quarters, amongst which was a body of eighty Hottentots from Port Elizabeth and neighbourhood. This party on the way fell in with a detachment of the enemy, with whom a skirmish immediately took place. The Caffers were soon repulsed, and the Hottentots continued their march, and reached town without molestation. One of their number was wounded in the arm by a musket-ball, discharged by a Caffer during the skirmish.

It is next to impossible to collect the various melancholy incidents which have transpired since the commencement of this warfare: the public mind is perfectly sated with tales of rapine and plunder, as well as in such a state of feverish excitement, from the various rumours which are in circulation, that facts which are in themselves appalling, and which at any other time would engage deeply the public attention, are passed by almost unheeded.

In the Kat River the inhabitants have hitherto maintained their position; they have assembled themselves together at four different points, and formed themselves into the same number of divisions for mutual defence. It is said that one of the inhabitants accidentally fell in with two Caffers, and that the latter inquired why the Hottentots were alarmed, and why they fled from their dwellings. They assured him that the hostility of the Caffers was not directed against the Hottentots, but against the whites, and that while the former should be spared, the latter would be pursued with the bitterest vengeance. But little importance would be attached to this report were it not confirmed by facts of undeniable authenticity. Although immediately on the borders of

Tyali's and Macomo's territories, yet this settlement has not been plundered of its cattle; and it is said that some which were taken were returned by order of those Chiefs. All this clearly shows the wily policy of those crafty savages. They well know that if they could but paralyze the exertions of the Hottentots assembled at that point, or detach them from the general cause at the present juncture, they would so far weaken our hands; and that were their operations ultimately successful, they would then fall an easy and a certain prey to these their hereditary enemies. We perceive clearly that the Hottentots are at this moment placed in a situation—not of difficulty, as their duty is as clear as the sun at noon—but of extreme delicacy.

On Saturday night, a message, in writing, from the Caffer chief Tyali reached town. It was addressed to the Commandant, Lieut.-Col. Somerset, and had been written by the Reverend W. Chalmers, who is stationed at the Chumie. This gentleman stated that he was peremptorily commanded by Tyali to write this communication, and that Tyali himself dictated the terms; which are, as it is understood to be, a proposal for a cessation of hostilities.

Tuesday, 6th January, a communication was received that an attack had been made that morning by the enemy on the Military Post at Hermanns Kraal, a station defended by a small detachment of the 75th Regt., and about twenty farmers, who had taken refuge there with their flocks and herds. On receipt of this intelligence, a strong party of mounted men was immediately despatched to the relief of the place; but on arriving, it was found that the Caffers had retreated, having succeeded, after a good deal of skirmishing, in carrying off the flocks and herds. It appears that early in the morning the enemy showed themselves in considerable force, and commenced the attack on the post by a discharge

of fire-arms. Many of the invaders were mounted on good horses; and from the activity and determination displayed by them, it is generally imagined that the post would at one period have been carried. This disaster was, however, averted by the timely appearance of a party of about thirty men, who were escorting some waggons from Fort Beaufort to Graham's Town. This party immediately attacked the enemy's flank, and succeeded in forcing him to retire. One of the most conspicuous men in the ranks of the invaders was a man of colour, formerly in the service of Mr. J. Howse of Graham's Town. This ruffian was well mounted, and armed with a double-barrelled gun. He appeared to exercise considerable authority, as on his horse being shot under him, he was observed immediately to seize another horse, rode by a Caffer at his side, whom he unceremoniously unhorsed, and then instantly resumed his former position. Two Caffers were killed in this affair, and it is supposed that several were wounded and conveyed into the bush. On our part one farmer was slightly wounded by a musket-ball in the hand, and a soldier of the mounted rifles in the thigh by an assagai.

On Wednesday, January 7th, advices were received from Bathurst, which stated that at a farm-house on the road-side an Englishman named Turner was found lying murdered. The body of this poor man was pierced with numerous assagai wounds, whilst the head was actually severed from the trunk. It appeared that he had obstinately refused to quit the spot at the time when the other inhabitants fled from their homes, under an idea that as he was not in arms, he should be spared by these savage marauders. The poor man only discovered the fallacy of this idea when too late to escape, and may thus be considered to have fallen a victim to a vain credulity in the humanity of these ruthless barbarians.

Their plans have been matured with so much secrecy, and are so well calculated to embarrass the Colonists, and to render the possibility of defence, without an abandonment of property, utterly impracticable, that we cannot doubt their having fully counted the cost before they engaged in the enterprise; and there is good reason to suppose, that when their plans are more fully developed, they will be found much better prepared to defend themselves, either within their own territories or by retaliation on the Colonists within our limits, than some people are led to expect. We have, however, no fears as to the result of the contest. We attach but little importance to their display of fire-arms, on which so much stress has been laid, notwithstanding it is the opinion of a few well-informed persons, that they will muster not less than 600 or 700 men, mounted and well armed with guns: still their stock of ammunition must be exhausted—their horses will rather encumber them than be of service—and must, if we only act with promptitude and boldness, soon fall into our hands; should they be hard pressed, they will instantly fly to the bush for refuge, and in that case their horses must be abandoned, and fall into the hands of their pursuers. Still it must be borne in mind that it is imprudent ever to despise an enemy; one rash or false movement, when we take the field, and the consequences may be most serious. It must be remembered that the numerical superiority of the enemy is very great, and that immense multitudes are at hand to be poured in upon us if it should be apparent that we are not sufficiently powerful to repel the present unprovoked aggression, and to punish, as they deserve, the audacious and savage invaders.

At the Missionary Institution of Theopolis, the Hot-tentots, and the few whites stationed there, were greatly

harassed, and having lost all their cattle, suffered from a scarcity of provisions. The Missionaries were quite unable from a want of oxen to remove their families to town, and their situation was truly pitiable. The Hottentots defended themselves with distinguished bravery. A letter from this Station states that on the 10th a party arrived there, three of whom started on foot from Port Elizabeth on the 6th with one gun. At Quagga Flat they were joined by six others, with three guns. On Saturday they found themselves near a body of thirty or forty Caffers, whom they immediately attacked with so much determination, that the enemy fled, leaving behind them twelve horses; one Caffer and a horse were killed in this affair.

On the 14th instant, about midnight, two Hottentots arrived at Graham's Town, from the place of the late D. Mahony, in which direction a patrole, under the charge of Mr. J. Brown, had been stationed. It appears that on the morning of that day a considerable body of Caffers presented themselves, and surrounded the building in which the patrole had taken refuge. J. Brown was accompanied by a man named P. Whittaker, and the Caffers demanded a parley with them, making great professions of kindness and good will. Notwithstanding J. Brown's knowledge of the perfidy of the Caffer character, he, under a sort of infatuation, was prevailed on with his companion to place himself in their hands; and he had no sooner done so than the barbarians instantly marched them up the hill, to a short distance from the house, and then amidst the most hellish shouts and vociferations proceeded to butcher them in cold blood, in the presence of their companions. Upon seeing this, the two Hottentots who brought the intelligence, succeeded in escaping from the back of the house, and ultimately in reaching town as before stated.

It will be in the recollection of our readers, that Mr. Brown was present with the unfortunate Henderson and Mahony when they were murdered, and that with great difficulty he escaped a similar fate. This is not the first time by many that his life has been in jeopardy from these relentless savages; and still, with a kind of infatuation which appears inexplicable, he again placed himself in a situation of extreme peril, which has led to his premature and cruel death. Immediately this painful intelligence was received, Major Lowen, and a party of the Mounted Rifles were dispatched by Lieut. Colonel Smith to the scene of the murder, and from him a report has been received, which states that the enemy had moved off in the direction of the Kap Bush; they were heard to say that it was their intention to join a Commando which was assembling in the Karriga, and then immediately to fall upon Graham's 'Town. The bodies of the murdered men were found lying on the spot where they were butchered. They had been beaten to death with knob kerries\*, instead of being destroyed by the assagai, according to the usual practice. Our friends need be under no apprehension for Graham's Town: the only fear felt here is, that the remorseless savages will not keep their word, but proceed in their harassing system, cutting off small parties, and defenceless inhabitants in the same desultory way in which they have hitherto acted.

A force marched on the morning of the 24th for Fort Wiltshire, a position of importance, as it acted upon the enemy's line of retreat, and insured a supply of provisions and forage for the troops under Major Cox, on their return from the expedition to Tyali's kraal. Several waggons laden with timber accompanied this force, being required to

\* Sticks with heavy knobs at the end.



repair the damage done to the fort, by the attempts of the enemy to fire it after it had been abandoned, and in which, owing to its peculiar construction, they but partially succeeded.

The enemy appears as numerous and as widely dispersed as ever, showing themselves in small bodies, but in every direction from the Keiskamma to the Sunday River, and from the sea-coast to the Storm-bergen. They have been attacked wherever met with ; and their loss, as already reported, exceeds four hundred killed. In the Zuureberg, a considerable body gave battle to a detachment under Lieut.-Colonel Somerset, who defeated them with the loss of forty men on their side. Twelve posts are occupied on the lines of the enemy's communication with Cafferland. A force of four hundred men quitted Graham's Town on the 9th, under Major Cox. Eno's kraal was attacked and destroyed on the 12th. This column, joined by another under Major Burney, from Fort Beaufort, was in full march on Tyali's and Macomo's kraals, the destruction of which will be the almost certain result.

The Honourable Colonel Smith has, with surpassing activity, and a minuteness of arrangement that leaves nothing to chance, made every disposition, as well for attack as defence, not only carrying the war into the heart of the enemy's own country, but employing a large portion of his force in clearing the most dangerous parts of the invaded country from the presence of the Caffers, whose numbers have as yet undergone no sensible diminution.

The character of this invasion having been variously represented, and the invading force, which is now known to consist of numerous Caffers from almost every tribe, much underrated, it is fit that its effects, at least, should not be misunderstood. These are forcibly described by the gallant Commander himself—

Already are seven thousand persons dependent upon the government for the necessaries of life. The land is filled with the lamentations of the widow and the fatherless. The indelible impressions already made upon myself by the horrors of an irruption of savages upon a scattered population, almost exclusively engaged in the peaceful occupation of husbandry, are such as to make me look on those I have witnessed in a service of thirty years, ten of which in the most eventful period of war, as trifles to what I have now witnessed; and compel me to bring under consideration, as forcibly as I am able, the heart-rending position in which a very large portion of the inhabitants of this frontier are at present placed, as well as their intense anxiety respecting their future condition.

The Graham's Town Journal of the 22nd of January states, the most remarkable events we have to record during the past week, relating to the affairs of this frontier, are, the arrival of his Excellency the Governor at Graham's Town, and the return of the party under the command of Major Cox, of the 75th Regiment, which has been directed to scour a portion of the Caffer territory. This detachment having crossed the Colonial boundary, and attacked Eno's kraal, moved forward to the kraal of the Chief Tyali, the most active and daring of the confederate Chiefs. Here they found the place abandoned—not a human being to be seen—nor any cattle of all the immense herds which had been swept out of the Colony. The party contented themselves, therefore, with firing the deserted huts, and then returned to Graham's Town, which they reached on Sunday last.

Previous to quitting this part of the country, some of the party were despatched to the Chumie Institution, belonging to the Glasgow Missionary Institution, for the purpose of

suggesting to the Missionaries resident there—the Rev. Messrs. Chalmers and Weir—the propriety of their withdrawing within the colonial boundary, but these gentlemen stated that they were then undecided what course it would be most advisable for them to pursue under existing circumstances—danger threatened them on either hand; by staying, they might probably fall the victims of Caffer treachery; by attempting to escape, they must incur an imminent risk of detection; and if the suspicious Chiefs were once aroused, vengeance would inevitably follow.

After writing the foregoing, intelligence reached us of the escape of these Missionaries from the hands of the perfidious barbarians. The following extract of a letter from the Kat River Settlement will afford some interesting particulars on this subject, as well as on the state of that part of the country. It is dated Fort Adelaide, 19th January. —“Since my last, W. D. Klerck’s whole crop has been set on fire, and entirely destroyed. He had about two thousand sheaves of corn, and more than that quantity of barley. If this mode of warfare be followed up, it must aggravate our calamities tenfold; but we sincerely hope the Colonial forces will soon take the field, by which the fiendish career of these barbarians may be checked. About eleven o’clock last night we were surprised by a visit from Messrs. Chalmers and Weir, who came to seek assistance in bringing off their families. They were obliged to steal away in the dark, and, from the state of things, were uncertain whether the Institution (the Chumie) might not be attacked last night.

“Captain Armstrong gave them sixty mounted men with whom they started about midnight; so as, if possible, to reach the Station before daybreak, in order to escape the observation of the Caffers. They will be obliged to aban-

don every thing, as it would be imprudent to delay for waggons, and thus risk their own safety. Mr. and Mrs. Bennie are still at Lovedale. I wish we could afford them succour, but from this quarter I fear it is impossible. Messrs. Keyser and Ross have retired to Burn's Hill." We are glad to add to this intelligence, that Messrs. Chalmers and Weir, with their families, succeeded in gaining the encampment in safety.

We are informed also, that before Major Cox returned with his detachment from Tyali's territory, he heard that a post of observation, consisting of forty-five Caffers, with muskets, had been left by that Chief on the top of the Chumie Mountain, and in the forest on its side. No situation could, it appears, have been better selected for the purpose intended, as from thence the whole country for a distance of fifty miles within the Colonial boundary can be overlooked: Major Burney, who had united himself to Major Cox's command, was directed therefore to dislodge this party if possible, but at present we have no information of his having effected this object. We learn also from the same source that the Chiefs Tyali and Macomo, and some other Chiefs, with a large force, have taken up a position on the Amatola, a small stream running into the Keiskamma, situated in a most difficult mountainous part of Cafferland, full of kloofs and ravines, where it is exceedingly difficult for horsemen to act with any effect.

From Somerset, accounts up to the 17th instant state, that at the Field Cornetcies of East Riet River, and Baviaan's River, from Winterberg to the latter, and from the Konap to Kaga, and from thence to near the Fish River, have been all laid waste by the enemy. The acting Civil Commissioner was incessantly employed in making the best disposition with the small disposable force he could com-

mand for the defence of the points most vulnerable to the enemy in that part of the country.

Intelligence was also received from the Northern Frontier, of a suspicious and unpleasant character, to the effect that the Griqua Chief Adam Kok had been necessitated to assemble all his men at Philippolis for the purpose of defending himself against the Chief Masalikatse, who had sent him information—a custom among the native tribes—of his determination to attack him.

On the 20th of January despatches were received by Colonel Smith, communicating the perilous position of the Missionaries and traders who had escaped the massacre, who were still in the territories of the hostile Chiefs. These despatches were received at seven o'clock. At one o'clock Major Cox started from town merely with an escort, having received orders to collect a sufficient force from Kat River, Fort Beaufort, and Fort Wiltshire, to cover their retreat into the Colony. By the 25th, two hundred and fifty men had been collected, and on the 26th, at daybreak, the party proceeded on the route to Burn's Hill, where they arrived the same evening. Heavy rains had set in—but as a number of Caffers had been seen in the neighbourhood, and as it was probable that the rivers would soon become impassable, the party immediately set off on its return, accompanied by all the Europeans who had been spared in that part of the country. These consisted of the Missionaries Keyser, Mac Dermot, Laing, and three traders. Mr. Bennie and other persons afterwards joined them at Lovedale, making a total of thirty-five persons who had thus been rescued from their perilous station.

Matawa, brother of Tyali and Macomo, accompanied the Missionaries at his own request. On their way towards the Colony, the advanced guard fell in with a party of

Caffers conveying cattle from the Colony. The marauders were instantly attacked, and one hundred head of cattle, which had been taken from the Kat River, recaptured: twenty of the enemy were killed in this affair.

We are glad to say that nearly all the Missionaries who were resident in the Caffer country have reached Graham's Town in safety. Mr. Brownlee still continued at his Station on the Buffalo River, and determined, it was said, to remain there. Mr. Ayliff was either in Hintza's territories, or among the neighbouring Tambookies; and Mr. Dugmore continued on the Mission Station at Wesleyville. After the Station at Mount Coke had been abandoned, Umgai sent four men to sleep in the Mission-house at night; but while they were there, the people under the Chiefs Isiyolo and Kasana came and broke the windows, and the next day set the whole village on fire.

The places destroyed are a large mission-house, a new chapel, the old chapel used as a school-room, the assistant's house, the workshop, together with a number of huts and Caffer houses connected with the Station. The chiefs above named, who committed this work of destruction, are of 'Slambie's tribe, and occupy from the Debe—a stream about four miles from Wesleyville, which runs into the Keiskamma—up to the Tamacha and Umtati Rivers. Hintza removed back to Butterworth, and placed one of his principal men in charge of it; a measure which he positively refused to take when solicited to do so a short time before by the Missionary.

This crafty chief seems to have had his fears awakened by three circumstances. 1st. The Boers with whom he returned to the Indwe, just before the war began, fled from him. 2ndly. The destruction of Eno's kraal by the commando under Major Cox. 3rdly. The numbers of Caffers

killed in the colony: the Caffers describe this by a figure, purporting that the killed lay scattered about like stones. Hintza will doubtless use every exertion to make it appear that he is an innocent man; against which almost every fact connected with him, both just previous to the war and since its commencement, is at perfect variance. It is well known that numerous bodies of Caffers have marched from the other side of the Buffalo, and have joined in the invasion of the Colony. Some of these have been distinctly recognized as Hintza's people, and cattle innumerable have been driven from the Colony the same route; and it is not denied that they are now grazing in Hintza's territory.

Another interesting incident is the return to the Colony of Messrs. Fynn and Shepstone, accompanied by the chief Cobus, who voluntarily placed himself in the power of the British Government as a hostage for the fidelity of his brothers and the people whom they command. This line of policy, as might be expected, greatly roused the indignation of the hostile tribes; and there was reason to fear that, unless speedy succour was afforded from our Government, the two brothers Pato and Kama would fall a sacrifice to their vindictive countrymen.

The following extract gives a full detail of the affair in which a son of the Field-cornet Groepe was severely wounded.

“The brave conduct of this young man deserves more than a passing notice. He and his uncle were the advanced guard upon a herd of cattle, and had off-saddled to rest the horses a short time; unfortunately they did so in an avenue between bushes, to be sheltered from a drizzling rain; a party of eighteen Caffers had already occupied the same bush unperceived by them, and when the Groepes

were preparing to saddle up, the Caffers simultaneously stood up in a ring about them, and instantly closed in.

“The Groepes set themselves back to back and kept the enemy at bay by presenting their muskets, and threatening at all points; young Groepe had desired his uncle not to fire too soon; a Caffer seeing an advantageous moment, sprung from the circle and stabbed him in the back under the right shoulder-blade, and so forcibly that the assagai came out in front, immediately under the right nipple; he instantly called to his uncle, ‘Fire now!’ and at the same moment he fired himself, and brought one of the enemy to the ground; he immediately sprung through the opening he had thus made, and kept retreating with his face to the enemy, constantly threatening with his empty gun.

“The Caffers divided, one portion pursuing the uncle, the other and the greatest part, the youth; whilst retreating he attempted to reload, but in lifting the powder-horn for this purpose, he received an assagai through the left fore arm, which quite disabled him from loading again; immediately after he was wounded in the head, the assagai having gone through his hat; this he pulled out and threatened his assailants with. In this way he retreated about one mile, until, faint with loss of blood, he fell down in an open ravine, but kept his back to a bank; at this critical moment the other cattle-guards began to approach the spot, which the Caffers seeing, immediately fled. When the guards came up the assagai was still standing through his body, which they extracted by taking hold of the iron end, and drawing its whole length through the breast. Dr. Caw has been most assiduous in his attendance, but states that it is extremely doubtful whether he can recover. The uncle, who was reported to have been killed, escaped without a single wound.”



## OFFICIAL INTELLIGENCE.

*“Head-Quarters, Graham Town, February 16th, 1835.*

“With reference to the notice of the 13th instant, the Governor and Commander-in-Chief has the satisfaction to announce, that the continued operations of Colonel Smith have since been crowned with complete success.

“On the night of the 14th and in the course of the 15th instant, the Caffer tribes of Eno, Botma, Dushanie, and some of that of Macomo, were expelled from the remaining fastnesses into which they had retired on the evening of the 12th, and driven altogether over the Keiskamma.

“Their aggregate loss in killed and wounded has been very great. Ours has amounted in the whole of these operations to twelve killed and eleven wounded.

“The cattle which have fallen into our hands since the 12th amounts to about four thousand head, with large quantities of sheep, goats, and some horses.

“Colonel Smith, who has conducted this necessary and important enterprise with consummate ability, vigour, and resolution, praises all the officers and troops employed, whether Regulars, Burghers, or Hottentot Levies: to use his own expression,—‘There has not been a man who did not well and cheerfully do his duty; and assuredly through the whole of this arduous service, in which they have driven a determined enemy from strongholds of great difficulty, and peculiarly favourable to his mode of fighting—patiently enduring great fatigue in a suffocating climate, and suffering from an unavoidable scarcity of water,—they have never ceased to display an unflinching and persevering intrepidity and determination of purpose, of which it is impossible to speak too highly.

“The wounded are doing well; and all the troops, with

the exception of the necessary Posts for securing the advantages thus gained, are on their march returning to Headquarters.

“ By Command of His Excellency,

“ W. H. DUTTON, Major,

“ Military Secretary.”

*February 26th.*—Two Caffer women visited the Kat River Settlement, and in the course of conversation with their acquaintances stated, that the Chief Tyali, with his own and some of Hintza's men, was preparing to make a descent on that neighbourhood. Much importance was not at first attached to this statement, as similar communications had been made before and never fulfilled: however, upon the report reaching Captain Armstrong, he considered it of sufficient moment to warrant him in despatching an order to recall these women, they having departed on their return to their own homes. It was, however, with extreme difficulty that any information could be obtained from them: nevertheless, Captain Armstrong deemed the few hints which he gathered of consequence enough to induce him to send out at daybreak, on the 19th instant, strong patrols of observation, which were ordered to be prepared to cover and protect the cattle.

These patrols soon sent in reports purporting that a large force of Caffers, supposed to be Tyali's Commando which had been mustered at the Amapoli River, were in sight; and that large bodies of the enemy were descending from the several kloofs around the Settlement. Demands were at the same moment made for reinforcements from so many different points, that at one period not more than thirty men were left to protect the camp and the women and children.

The enemy attacked the Colonial force with much determination, and were as bravely repulsed at every point. The most strenuous efforts were made to capture the cattle, but in spite of all their attempts the people of the Settlement succeeded ultimately in saving the whole of them, and in conveying them home at sunset; and in capturing five horses, one of which had been previously stolen from the Settlement, killing in the course of the day in the various engagements, sixty-seven Caffers, besides wounding many. The loss on our side was two killed, and one man and a woman severely wounded.

Mr. Brownlee finding himself menaced by the barbarians, who were committing the spoliation of the Mission property, was compelled at length to flee on foot, with his wife and children, towards the institution of Wesleyville. One night was spent in the bush; but on the following day he succeeded in reaching the institution in safety. Here all was in confusion. An order had been received by Pato from the Governor, to convey the Missionary and the traders who were there assembled on their way towards the Colony; and hasty preparations were making for their immediate departure. But few waggons could be had, and these were quite insufficient to remove the whole of the property, together with the families which required a conveyance. Little or no assistance was to be procured from any one, as each was too intent on his own preservation to give any effectual help to his fellow-sufferers.

Mr. Brownlee's Station on the Buffalo River was plundered one day, on the next it was consumed by fire, and thus all his books and property were destroyed by these desolating barbarians. We regret also to state that the same result was apprehended at Wesleyville, where there was much valuable property belonging to

the Wesleyan Missionary Society, and also to the Missionary stationed there. For want of a sufficient number of waggons, but little of this could be removed, and there is reason to fear that the whole has shared the same fate as that of Mr. Brownlee's Station.

The conduct of the Chiefs Pato and Kama is spoken of in terms of warm approbation. The moment they received the request from the Government to escort the traders and other British subjects towards the Colonial Frontier, they proceeded to make the necessary arrangements without a moment's delay, Pato himself heading the escort which protected the party to the Beka, the country between which stream and the Great Fish River was occupied in force by the people under these friendly Chiefs.

Mr. Brownlee states that the hostile Caffers fast retreated to the mountainous country to the north and north-east of Cafferland, a tract which from all accounts abounds with the most intricate and difficult fastnesses. Such a position will not be long tenable by a people like the Caffers, who are too much encumbered with cattle to lie concealed from the eye of an active pursuer. Their cattle constitutes their sole wealth, as well as the means of sustenance, and if once deprived of their herds, the people are themselves conquered.

On the 23rd of March, Colonel Smith, Chief of the Staff, accompanied by the Field-Cornets Greyling and Nel, and ten other burghers, proceeded from Fort Wiltshire, towards Block Drift, where they forded the Chusie River. From thence they took the direction of the Chumie Institution to Lovedale; a Station formerly belonging to the Glasgow Missionary Society, and which they found had been fired by the enemy. Here an athletic Caffer, fully armed, was observed to run into the ruins of a house, which was

immediately surrounded, and he was called upon, through the medium of a Caffer guide, to lay down his arms and surrender, but no inducement could prevail on him to comply: on the contrary, he threw an assagai which nearly proved fatal to one of the patrol. The infatuated savage was ultimately fired upon from a height above the Lovedale Institution, and killed. Colonel Smith then proceeded to reconnoitre the position occupied on the Amatoli by the enemy under Tyali. On the 25th Colonel Smith received information from Field Commandant Rademeyer, that it had been reported to him by the Chief Pato that the enemy intended to attack the latter, and also one of Rademeyer's posts on the line of the Keiskamma, and then to re-occupy his old position in the Fish River Bush. Although this information was considered extravagant, yet as a party of five Caffers had been observed prowling about the camp, and five more in the neighbourhood of Fort Wiltshire, one of whom was shot, the Chief of the Staff thought it proper to take such precautionary measures as might check such a movement should it be attempted. Accordingly a strong patrol was marched direct to the line across which the enemy must necessarily pass from his position on the Amatoli, should he make the attack in question. This patrol was further directed, in the event of falling in with the *spoor* of the enemy, to follow it wherever it might lead to. Colonel Smith himself, with his usual activity and decision, took the command of this party, which consisted of two hundred of the Swellendam Burghers, under the command of the veteran and gallant old Field-Commandant Linde, one hundred Albany Burghers under Field-Commandant Dreyer, a detachment of the Cape Mounted Rifles, under Ensign Lowen, and thirty of the Corps of Guides, under Messrs. Bowker, Driver, and

Southey. Accordingly, at two o'clock on the morning of the 27th, this force moved forward, crossed the Keiskamma at the Wiltshire Drift, and marched direct upon the Um-desina, a distance from the camp of thirty miles. No spoor of the enemy being discovered, the troops moved off with great rapidity and attacked the enemy in his strong position in the difficult and extensive kloof of the Um-desina. The Colonial force was formed into three divisions, each of which penetrated at different points into the enemy's fastnesses. The result was perfectly successful, several of the enemy being slain, twelve hundred cattle, many horses, and considerable flocks of goats captured, one hundred and fifty women taken prisoners, and upwards of five hundred huts destroyed. The Caffers were in great force, but from the nature of the country, the bush being very thick and favourable for escape, comparatively few of them were slain (report says about thirty). No loss of life was sustained on our side, and only one man wounded, viz., an Albany Burgher named Portgieter, who received an assagai near the hip and through the thigh. After completing this arduous duty the troops returned to Fort Wiltshire with the cattle, the rear guard arriving at one o'clock, A.M., of the following morning, having made a march which in European warfare would scarcely be credited.

The Rev. J. Ayliff, who has recently fled from the territories of Hintza, throws some further light on the policy of that chief, fully confirmatory of the opinions that have been generally entertained relative to his connexion with the Amokosa and their attack upon the colony; the communication is dated from Clarkesbury\*, March 20th, in which he remarks—

\* A Missionary Station among the Tambookie Tribes.

“ Our removal here from Butterworth (17th February) was occasioned by the strange conduct of Hintza and his people, which satisfied us that evil was intended towards us.

“ Reports continually reached us that Hintza intended the destruction of the Station, and that my life was to be taken with his own hand. So satisfied were the Fingoes of Hintza’s intentions, that they had spies out in the direction of the Amena (source of the Kai, where Hintza now is), and held themselves in readiness to resist Hintza, frequently telling me that all the Fingoes in Hintza’s tribe intended fighting for the Station, and that if I died it should be behind their shields. The people of the Station were so suspicious, that if a Caffer came to speak to me they also came and stood near; and whenever I went out they followed me. When myself and Messrs. Palmer and Davis visited Hintza, at the Amena, about six weeks before I left Butterworth, he then professed the greatest friendship. In the night after the men had left our hut, Nomso and Noloko, two of Hintza’s principal wives, came to us and requested us to sing. After this Nomso (who is the principal wife, mother of Kili, the great son) commenced speaking, and said, among other things, ‘ You have done well in coming, you can *now* return in peace, as you have Hintza’s word; but take care—you can die. *You can tread on a snake in the grass, and die like other men.*’ From this we inferred that evil had been intended, but was for the present averted, though there was still need of our being upon our guard.

“ On our return to the Station we had peace for a short time, then the work of plunder again commenced day and night, a sufficient proof of Hintza’s insincerity, as no man would have dared to injure us in our property had Hintza discountenanced it. Mr. Hully, a trader, who speaks Caffer well, and who had been residing with Batti, a principal man

in Hintza's tribe, informed us that Batti had told him that Hintza had already commenced consulting the witch-doctors on the propriety of his making open war on the colony; that they had discouraged him, saying that the Fingoes would fight for the English; and further, that when Batti heard that Mr. Hully was proceeding to Butterworth he wept, saying, 'I am sorry you are going to that place, as evil will come upon it, when all the traders are together. My last word to you is, go away from *that* place without delay,' which he did by removing with his family to Clarkesbury.

" We found it impossible to preserve the cattle and horses of the Station at Butterworth, as the Caffers attempted to take them day and night, so that we were all completely worn out with watching and anxiety, and when the two traders, Eccles and Orton, reached Butterworth with the statement of their sufferings, inflicted with the sanction of Hintza, our eyes were opened to this Chief's true character, which, as you are well aware, nothing but undeniable proofs of lies, guilt, and duplicity would have done, as I was prepossessed in his favour, and long believed him quite unconcerned in the war.

" We were also involved in great trouble from the impossibility of our restraining the people of the Station from interrupting the free passage of the stolen cattle past the Station, especially when some cattle passed having the brand mark of Mr. Driver and Mr. Howse, though the people (Caffers) of the Station kept none, but delivered them back to the people from whom they had been taken. Yet this occasioned us much trouble: we therefore removed in the night of the 17th February, and as our party was strong, and in good spirits, we were not molested on the road.

" There are immense numbers of Colonial cattle in



Hintza's country. Umkondo, one of Hintza's captains on the sea-coast, called his people together that his doctor might strengthen them for the war, so that I have reason to think that Hintza's tribe will openly join the enemy. Part of the Colonial cattle entered Hintza's country along the sea-coast, and are deposited in the broken country near the mouth of the rivers from the Kei to the Umtata: some cattle have entered in the centre of the tribe, and have passed by the Station, and are now in the Iaka River. The people of Magwa have a great quantity of cattle near the Colosa River: some have entered near the Tsoma River, which runs into the Kei, but where they have gone we know not. Hintza's people say they are in the Tambookie country, but I think they are among Hintza or Yelloosoo's people: Mr. Painton writes from Buntingville, that it is reported there that Hintza is depositing the cattle in the mountains north of the Amena. The country north of the Amena is rough beyond anything I have seen in Africa; some of the passes, through which the river Indeve runs, are rugged and deep, but not bushy: this country is well known to the Dutch farmers, who have resided there. It is a matter of great regret that so many of the fine Colonial cattle should be destroyed, as they are doubtless being slaughtered daily. In all the parts of the Kei River the Colonial cattle are numerous, principally draught oxen.

“ On the 18th of March, the inhabitants residing on the Station at Clarkesbury received the alarming intelligence that the Ficani were descending from the mountains a short distance in the rear, and attacking the tribes under the Chiefs Tooboo and Deko. As soon as this was communicated to the Europeans on the spot, several traders proceeded to the scene of action for the purpose of assisting the Tambookies in repelling the enemy. It appears, how-

ever, at the first onset the latter fled, and a young man named Robert Rolins, formerly a trader in Hintza's country, was killed in consequence of the stubbornness of his horse in refusing to descend a steep shelf. An effort was made by the people of the Station who were nearest to him to save him, but it was too late. He has left in that country a wife and three or four young children to deplore his fate. What is very remarkable, and what heightens the distress of the case is, that the young man murdered at Fort Beaufort on Sunday last was a brother of Mr. Rolin's, and they both met a violent death at the hands of the barbarous natives within the short period of ten days from each other."

The result of the attack of the Ficani is thus described: "The whole of the inhabitants under the tribes mentioned are completely destroyed, the houses burnt, and the cattle, estimated at two thousand head, carried off; a tract of country of about twenty miles in length by ten in breadth is completely devastated. The Kraal of Kabosa, just behind the Station, was the last in this direction which was destroyed. It is said that the Tambookie people may now be considered as completely subdued; and it is the opinion of the Europeans on the spot, that the Ficani will go home with the booty, strengthen themselves, and return and destroy the whole of the nation."

The communication from Mr. Ayliff states, "By this conveyance we forward a memorial to the Governor on behalf of Vadanna, (the Tambookie Chief), praying for assistance to punish Capai. The traders, who are with their families thirty in number, besides drivers and leaders of waggons, also send a second memorial, for an armed force to remove them from this place to the Colony, through the upper part of Hintza's country. Should this be granted, we purpose, in conjunction with our brethren from Morley

and Buntingville, to remove into the Colony until these troubles shall have subsided.

“ Although this tribe is not concerned in the war, yet both this Station and Morley will be in great danger as soon as the Colonial troops commence offensive operations, as then the tribes of 'Slambie and Hintza will most probably fall back upon these Stations, and revenge upon them the punishment they receive from the Colony. Vadanna has already openly declared on the side of the Colony, by gathering together all the cattle (but very few) stolen from the Colony, which some individuals of 'Slambie's tribe had concealed in this country. Vadanna is ready to give these up to the Colony 'as soon as they are called for.' Mr. Warner states that ' There are eleven traders on our Station, among whom are George Whitehead, and Richard Hully, with his wife and child, also James Colvery and Mr. Love and two children ; they are all quite safe and well.'

“ There is a point arising out of this attack which is calculated to excite some apprehension at the present moment, namely, the probability of there being some collision between Capai and the Caffer Chiefs engaged in hostilities against the Colony. Should this be the case, the whole of the tribes from the Colonial frontier to the Zoolas would most likely be thrown into commotion, and the present war in that case protracted to a date yet very distant.”

The following is a brief outline of the remarks made by the Rev. J. Laing, lately resident at Burn's Hill, at a meeting in Graham's Town, on the 27th March :—

“ Some have said that the Missionaries must have seen the preparations which the Caffers are supposed to have made previous to their infatuated and cruel attack on the

colony. Preparations they may have made, and plans they may have formed previous to their murderous attack on the frontier, but they contrived to keep the Missionaries entirely in the dark, both as to their hostile intentions and their preparations. From the disposition of their forces, one can scarcely refrain, in the absence of positive evidence, from believing that they must have laid their plans with no ordinary degree of sagacity; but whatever the Frontier Caffers may have intended, the following statement will show you that if anything existed like a positive intention on the part of their countrymen to enter the Colony in hostile array, they were perfect adepts at concealing their feelings. In company with my respected brother, the Rev. J. Ross, of the Glasgow Missionary Society, on the very eve of the Caffer irruption, I travelled over a considerable part of the Caffer country. This journey we began on the 9th, and ended on the 13th of December. In the course of it we visited and preached to the Caffers about the Rabuse and the Igolonei, whom we found not only attentive to our message, but extremely kind and peaceable. Thus, Sir, you have a proof that the Caffers gave no reason to the Missionaries to lead them to imagine that their intentions towards the Colony were changed.

“The first indications of the irruption presented themselves to my observation on the 17th December. Never had I seen such commotions among the Caffers before. I found that the trader at our Station, an excellent young man, was placed in very trying circumstances on account of the conduct of the covetous and blood-thirsty natives. On comparing the accounts which I could collect, I began to be apprehensive of the destruction of the property of the traders: I feared also that their lives might be endangered; and it was very apparent that the safety of the Missionaries was some-

what precarious. In these circumstances I wrote letters which I wished to be forwarded to the Colony, but all correspondence with it was cut off.

“The conduct of Suta, the principal widow of Gaika, in saving the life of one of the traders deserves to be mentioned with praise. The murder of the traders near the frontier appears to have been perpetrated about the 22nd December; soon after that period, not fewer than one hundred and fifty armed men came to the trader’s place near our Station, and by their words and actions gave plain indications of their hostile intentions towards him. The assagais had almost pierced his breast, when Suta stepped in between his enemies and him, appeased their rage, and brought him in safety out of their hands.

“You ought not to reckon that the Missionary Stations have been erected to no useful purpose, had they done no more than afforded refuge to the traders. The number of the traders who have fallen is comparatively small,—much smaller than it would have been had there been no Missionaries to protect them.

“We received no regular intelligence from the Colony during the greater part of the time we remained in Cafferland: after the commencement of the irruption our principal accounts were from the Caffers themselves, and by these we saw that even at that time the Caffers conceived that in many instances they have met with a warm reception. In consequence of this, some of them refused to come forward at the order of their chiefs, and others declared that the most extensive forest in the country would be too small to afford them protection when the great guns should be opened on them.

“On comparing our situation with that of our other Missionary friends, I consider that during the troubles we en-

joyed more outward peace than they; we never came into unpleasant collision with the enraged Caffers, as some of our friends did; we met with no interruption in our meetings morning and evening for worship with the people: this peace we, under God, owed in some measure to the same individual who acted so praiseworthy a part in reference to the trader.

“On one occasion she succeeded in defeating a powerful combination which had been formed against us. She appears to have been unable by arguments to effect her excellent purpose, and we are told when these failed she had recourse to tears. Had she not after all been heard in our behalf, she told those who wished to plunder, if not to kill us also, that she would have no more to do with people that would kill their best friends, and that she would retire to her father, a Tambookie Chief. I hope that if this individual can be found, she will be separated from those who have arrayed themselves against us, and be treated as a friend.”

Intelligence has been received, up to 23rd of May, from the Cape of Good Hope, by which it appears that the Chief Hintza pertinaciously refused to comply with the demands of the Governor, until hostilities had actually commenced, and a severe chastisement inflicted on his people; when, finding it impossible to stand against the British troops, he surrendered himself, with fifty of his principal men, agreeing, it is stated, to deliver up the persons concerned in the massacre of the English traders, with fifty thousand head of horned cattle, and one thousand horses, and to comply with such other terms as the Governor in justice thought fit to impose. The Caffer war may therefore now be considered as happily terminated, the troops being on their march back to the Colony.

It is said the River Kei is to be the future boundary of the Colony, and that the country between the present Colonial frontier and that point will be appropriated as the future residence of the Fingoes; and also that those Tambookies under Vadanna, and Caffers under Pato, Kama, and Cobus—who have shown such unswerving fidelity to the Colonists throughout this trying period—are to have a share of the forfeited territory. The whole, however, of this country is, it is said, to be subject to British control, and the people amenable to British jurisdiction.

---

After perusing the foregoing statements, it will, no doubt, be inquired, where now is the influence that Christianity has been said to exercise over the minds of these people, and what have the Missionaries accomplished for Caffraria, seeing that the natives appear the same sanguinary men, and that deeds as savage and relentless have marked the present invasion, as any that have characterized their former history.

To this it may be replied, that the operation of Christian principles over a savage mind is usually slow and gradual, and that the labours of a few Missionaries amongst so vast a population, who, from their pastoral habits, are of necessity scattered over an immense tract of country, could not reasonably be expected in so short a period to have effected any great change over the body of the people; nevertheless, amongst that portion which the Missionaries have been enabled to assemble together for instruction at the different Stations, the effects have been most cheering and satisfactory. It is said that not one individual who had embraced the doctrines of the Bible has joined his countrymen in their invasion of the Colony; they have all to a man reprobated the measure as pregnant with the greatest evil, and as

calculated to produce the most fatal consequences throughout the country; and have chosen rather to suffer, with their teachers and friends, the destruction of their property, and even to risk their lives in the protection of their benefactors, than become partakers in the spoils taken from the Colonists.

It is a pleasing and important feature in the history of this calamitous affair, that not less than *one hundred lives of British subjects* have been preserved from impending destruction through the influence of the Missionaries, aided by the exertions of their faithful followers; and if any additional evidence be required to establish the fact that great advantages have resulted from the labours of these devoted men, the plain and impartial statements in the foregoing pages of an individual unconnected with sect or party, of scenes which came immediately under his own observation, cannot but afford a convincing proof of their utility.

Thus it is evident that the reason why a greater influence has not been exerted over the various tribes inhabiting that country, is that the Missionary efforts have been conducted on a scale far too contracted for such a vast population; had the whole country been brought under the same moral cultivation as at the Missionary institutions, we should not now have to deplore the loss of life and sacrifice of property which this terrible calamity has occasioned. Few can have perused the statements contained in these pages, in reference to the degraded character of the people, without feeling impressed with the conviction, that nothing short of imparting the Gospel to the entire population will render them a peaceable and happy people.

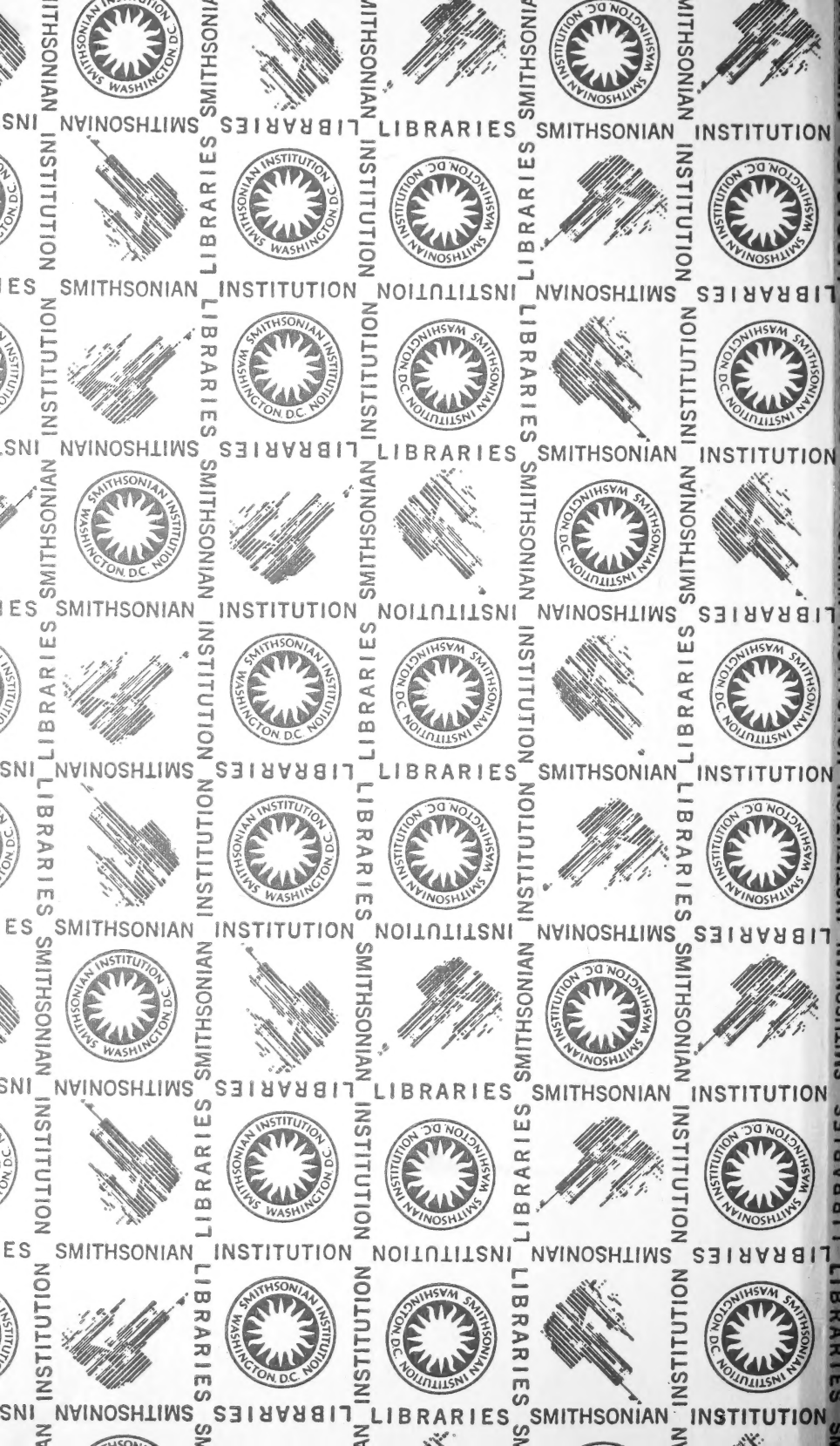
THE END.











Steedman, Andrew.

LIBRARY

Wanderings and Adventures in the

BORROWER'S NAME Interior of Southern  
1835 Africa.

D83

SMITHSONIAN INSTITUTION LIBRARIES



3 9088 00271484 8

afa DT827.S81X

v. 2 Wanderings and adventures in the